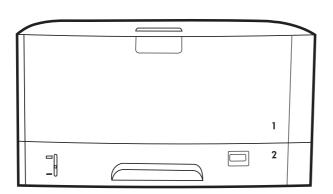
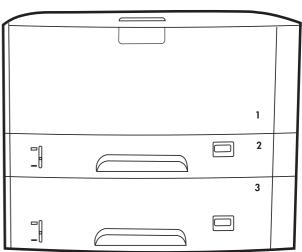
# HP LaserJet 5200 Series printers User Guide









# HP LaserJet 5200 Series printers

User Guide



#### Copyright and License

© 2005 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Part number: Q7543-90907

Edition 2, 6/2009

#### **Trademark Credits**

Adobe® and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Linux is a U.S. registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows NT® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corp.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

ENERGY STAR® and the ENERGY STAR® logo are U.S. registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.



#### **HP Customer Care**

#### **Online Services**

For 24-hour access to updated HP printer-specific software, product information, and support information through an Internet connection, go to the Web site: <a href="https://www.hp.com/support/lj5200">www.hp.com/support/lj5200</a>.

Go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/support/net\_printing">www.hp.com/support/net\_printing</a> for information about the HP Jetdirect external print server.

HP Instant Support Professional Edition (ISPE) is a suite of Web-based troubleshooting tools for desktop computing and printing products. Go to <u>instantsupport.hp.com</u>.

#### **Telephone support**

HP provides free telephone support during the warranty period. For the telephone number for your country/region, see the flyer that shipped with the printer, or visit <a href="www.hp.com/support/">www.hp.com/support/</a>. Before calling HP, have the following information ready: the product name and serial number, the date of purchase, and a description of the problem.

#### Software utilities, drivers, and electronic information

#### www.hp.com/go/lj5200 software

The Web page for the drivers is in English, but you can download the drivers themselves in several languages.

#### HP direct ordering for accessories or supplies

- United States: <a href="https://www.hp.com/sbso/product/supplies">www.hp.com/sbso/product/supplies</a>.
- Canada: www.hp.ca/catalog/supplies
- Europe: www.hp.com/supplies
- Asia-Pacific: <a href="https://www.hp.com/paper/">www.hp.com/paper/</a>

To order genuine HP parts or accessories, go to the HP Parts Store at <a href="https://www.hp.com/buy/parts">www.hp.com/buy/parts</a> (U.S. and Canada only), or call 1-800-538-8787 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-3154 (Canada).

#### **HP** service information

To locate HP-Authorized Dealers, call 1-800-243-9816 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-3867 (Canada).

Outside the United States and Canada, call the customer support number for your country/region. See the flyer that shipped in the box with the printer.

#### **HP** service agreements

Call 1-800-835-4747 (U.S.) or 1-800-268-1221 (Canada).

For extended service, call 1-800-446-0522.

#### **HP Easy Printer Care software**

To check the printer status and settings and view troubleshooting information and online documentation, use the HP Easy Printer Care software. You must have performed a full software

ENWW iii

installation in order to use the HP Easy Printer Care software. See <u>Using the HP Easy Printer Care</u> <u>software</u>.

#### **HP support and information for Macintosh computers**

Go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/macosx">www.hp.com/go/macosx</a> for Macintosh OS X support information and HP subscription service for driver updates.

Go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/mac-connect">www.hp.com/go/mac-connect</a> for products that are designed specifically for the Macintosh user.

iv HP Customer Care ENWW

# **Table of contents**

1	Printer basics	
	Quick access to printer information	2
	Printer at a glance	
	Features at a glance	
	Walkaround	
	Printer parts	
	Interface ports	
	Printer software	
	Printer drivers	
	Driver Autoconfiguration	
	Update Now	
	HP Driver Preconfiguration	
	Additional drivers	
	Opening the printer drivers	
	Software for Macintosh computers	
	Installing Macintosh printing system software for networks	
	Installing Macintosh printing system software for direct connections (USB)	
	To remove software from Macintosh operating systems	
	Software for networks	
	HP Web Jetadmin	
	UNIX	
	Linux	
	Utilities	
	HP Easy Printer Care software	
	Embedded Web server Other components and utilities	
	·	
	Selecting print media	
	Supported media sizes	
	Supported media types	I <i>1</i>
2	Control panel	
	Overview	
	Control-panel layout	
	Using the control-panel menus	.23
	To use the menus	.23
	Show Me How menu	
	Retrieve Job menu	.25
	Information menu	.26
	Paner Handling menu	27

	Configure Device menu	29
	Printing submenu	
	Print Quality submenu	
	System Setup submenu	
	I/O submenu	
	Resets submenu	
	Diagnostics menu	
	Service menu	
	Changing printer-control-panel configuration settings	
	Changing control-panel settings	
	To change a control-panel setting	
	Show address	
	Tray-behavior options	
	Sleep Delay	
	Personality	
	Clearable warnings	
	Auto continue	
	Cartridge low	
	Cartridge-out response	
	Jam recovery	
	RAM disk	
	Language	
	In and the stand (IVO) and firm of the	
3	Input/output (I/O) configuration	50
	Parallel configuration	
	USB configuration	
	Connecting the USB cable	
	Network configuration	
	Manually configuring TCP/IP parameters from the control panel	
	Setting an IP address	
	Setting the subnet mask	
	Setting the default gateway	
	Disabling network protocols (optional)	
	To disable IPX/SPX	
	To disable AppleTalk	
	To disable DLC/LLC	
	Enhanced I/O (EIO) configuration	
	HP Jetdirect EIO print servers	55
4	Printing tasks	
	Controlling print jobs	58
	Source	58
	Type and Size	58
	Priority for print settings	
	Gaining access to printer driver settings	
	Using print media	
	Paper to avoid	
	Paper that can damage the printer	
	Configuring output bins	
	Printing to the top output bin	

Printing to the rear output bin	
Configuring trays	63
Loading tray 1 (multipurpose tray)	63
To load tray 1	63
Customizing tray 1 operation	65
Loading tray 2 (250-sheet tray)	65
To load tray 2	
Loading optional tray 3 (500-sheet tray)	
To load tray 3	
Printing on special media	
Printing on letterhead, prepunched, or preprinted paper (single-sided)	
Guidelines for printing on letterhead or preprinted forms	71
Printing on envelopes	
To load envelopes in tray 1	
Printing on labels	
Guidelines for printing on labels	
Printing on transparencies	
Guidelines for printing on transparencies	
Printing on rotated media	
Printing full-bleed images	
Printing on custom-size media	
Guidelines for printing custom-size paper	
Setting custom paper sizes	
Loading custom-size media in tray 2 or optional tray 3	
Printing on vellum	
Printing on glossy paper	
Colored paper	
Heavy paper	
HP LaserJet Tough paper	
Recycled paper	
Printing and paper storage environment	
Printing on both sides (duplexing)	
Paper orientation for printing on both sides	
Layout options for printing on both sides	
To print on both sides by using the built-in duplexer	
To print on both sides manually	
Using features in the Windows printer driver	
Creating and using quick sets	
Using watermarks	
Resizing documents	
Setting a custom paper size from the printer driver	
Using different paper and printing covers	
Printing a blank first page	
Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper	
Using the Services tab	
Using features in the Macintosh printer driver	
Creating and using presets	
Printing a cover page	
Printing a cover page  Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper	
Printing on both sides of the paper	90

**ENWW** 

	Managing special printing situations	92
	Printing a different first page	92
	Stopping a print request	92
	To stop the current print job from the printer control panel	92
	To stop the current print job from the software program	92
	Managing stored jobs	93
	Managing memory	94
5	Managing the printer	
•	Using printer information pages	96
	Configuring e-mail alerts	
	Using the embedded Web server	
	Opening the embedded Web server	
	To access the embedded Web server by using a network connection	
	Embedded Web server sections	
	Using HP Web Jetadmin software	
	Using the HP Easy Printer Care software	
	Supported operating systems	
	Supported browsers	
	To open the HP Easy Printer Care software	
	HP Easy Printer Care software sections	
	Using the HP Printer Utility for Macintosh	
	Opening the HP Printer Utility	
	HP Printer Utility features	
	·	
6	Maintanana	
0	Maintenance  Managing supplies	100
	Supplies life	
	Approximate print-cartridge replacement intervals	
	Managing the print cartridge	
	Print-cartridge life expectancy	
	Print-cartridge storage	
	HP print cartridges	
	HP policy on non-HP print cartridges	
	Print-cartridge authentication	
	HP fraud hotline and Web site	
	Replacing supplies and parts	
	Supply replacement guidelines	
	Changing the print cartridge	
	To change the print cartridge	
	Cleaning the printer	
	To clean the printer using the printer control panel	113
7	Problem solving	
	Basic troubleshooting checklist	
	Factors that affect printer performance	
	Troubleshooting flowchart	
	Step 1: Does READY appear on the control-panel display?	
	Step 2: Can you print a configuration page?	117

viii ENWW

Step 3: Can you print from a program?	118
Step 4: Does the job print as expected?	119
Step 5: Does the printer select the trays?	120
Solving general printing problems	122
Control-panel message types	
Control-panel messages	
Guidelines for using paper	
Printing special pages	
Common causes of jams	
Jam locations	
Jam recovery	
Clearing jams	
Clearing jams from the input-tray areas	
Clearing jams from the print-cartridge area	
Clearing jams from the output-bin areas	
Clearing jams from the optional duplexer	
Solving repeated jams	
Troubleshooting print-quality problems	
Print-quality problems associated with media	
Print-quality problems associated with the environment	
Print-quality problems associated with jams	
Image defect examples	
Light print (partial page)	
Light print (entire page)	
Specks	
Dropouts	
Lines	
Gray background	
Toner smear	
Loose toner	
Repeating defects	
Repeating image	
Misformed characters	
Page skew	
Curl or wave	
Wrinkles or creases	
Vertical white lines	
Tire tracks	
White spots on black	
Scattered lines	
Blurred print	
Random image repetition	
Troubleshooting network printing problems	
Troubleshooting common Windows problems	
Troubleshooting common Macintosh problems	
Troubleshooting Linux problems	
Troubleshooting common PostScript problems	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
General problems	170

### Appendix A Supplies and accessories

ENWW

Ordering parts, accessories, and supplies	1/2
Ordering directly from HP	172
Ordering through service or support providers	172
Ordering directly through the embedded Web server (for printers that are connect to a network)	
To order directly through the embedded Web server (for printers that a	
connected to a network)	
Ordering directly through the HP Easy Printer Care software (for printers that are	
directly connected to a computer)	172
Part numbers	173
Paper-handling accessories	173
Print cartridge	173
Memory	173
Cables and interfaces	173
Print media	174
Appendix B Service and support	
Hewlett-Packard limited warranty statement	177
Print cartridge, transfer unit, and fuser limited warranty statement	
HP maintenance agreements	
On-site service agreements	
Next-day on-site service	
Weekly (volume) on-site service	
Repacking the printer	
Extended warranty	
Appendix C Specifications  Physical specifications	182
Electrical specifications	
Acoustic emissions	
Operating environment	
Paper specifications	
Envelopes	
Envelopes with double side seams	
Envelopes with adhesive strips or flaps	
Envelopes war duriesive strips of haps	
Envelope storage	
Labels	
Label construction	
Transparencies	
тапорагеновез	100
Appendix D Regulatory information FCC regulations	100
Environmental product stewardship program	
Protecting the environment	
Ozone production	
Power consumption	
Paper use	
F add ugc	

x ENWW

Plastics	189
HP LaserJet printing supplies	189
HP printing supplies returns and recycling program information	190
Paper	
Material restrictions	190
Disposal of waste equipment by users in private households in the European Union	191
Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)	191
For more information	191
Declaration of conformity	193
Declaration of conformity	193
Safety statements	194
Laser safety	194
Canadian DOC regulations	194
VCCI statement (Japan)	194
Power cord statement (Japan)	194
EMI statement (Korea)	194
Laser statement for Finland	195
To install printer memory  Installing CompactFlash cards  Checking DIMM or CompactFlash installation  Saving resources (permanent resources)  Enabling memory for Windows  Using HP Jetdirect print server cards  Installing an HP Jetdirect print server card	204 208 210 211
Appendix F Printer commands  Understanding PCL 6 and PCL 5e printer command syntax  Combining escape sequences  Using escape characters  Selecting PCL 6 and PCL 5 fonts	214 214 215
Common PCL 6 and PCL 5 printer commands	216
Glossary	221

ENWW

xii ENWW

# 1 Printer basics

Now that the printer is set up and ready to use, take a few moments to familiarize yourself with the printer. This chapter contains basic information about the printer features:

- Quick access to printer information
- Printer at a glance
- Features at a glance
- Walkaround
- Printer software
- Selecting print media

ENWW 1

# **Quick access to printer information**

Several references are available for use with this printer. See <a href="www.hp.com/support/lj5200">www.hp.com/support/lj5200</a>.

Guide	Description
Getting started guide	Provides step-by-step instructions for installing and setting up the printer.
HP Jetdirect Embedded Print Server Administrator's Guide	Provides instructions to configure and troubleshoot the HP Jetdirect print server.
Accessory and consumable installation guides	Provide step-by-step instructions for installing the accessories and supplies. (These guides are supplied with the optional printer accessories and supplies.)
User guide	Provides detailed information for using and troubleshooting the printer. Available on the printer CD.
Online Help	Provides information about options that are available in the printer drivers. To view a Help file, open the online Help through the printer driver.

Chapter 1 Printer basics ENWW

2

# Printer at a glance

HP LaserJet 5200



- Prints up to 35 pages-perminute (ppm)
- 48 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM), upgradable up to 512 MB
- 100-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 1), 250-sheet input tray (tray 2), and 250-sheet output bin
- Hi-Speed universal serial bus (USB) 2.0 port, IEEE 1284compliant parallel port, and enhanced input/output (EIO) slot
- One open dual inline memory module (DIMM) slot
- Two compact flash memory slots for accessibility

HP LaserJet 5200n



HP LaserJet 5200 printer, plus:

- 64 MB RAM
- P Jetdirect fullfeatured embedded print server to connect to 10Base-T/100Base-TX networks

HP LaserJet 5200tn



HP LaserJet 5200 printer, plus:

- 64 MB RAM
- HP Jetdirect fullfeatured embedded print server to connect to 10Base-T/100Base-TX networks
- 500-sheet input tray (tray 3)

HP LaserJet 5200dtn



HP LaserJet 5200 printer, plus:

- 128 MB RAM
- HP Jetdirect fullfeatured embedded print server to connect to 10Base-T/100Base-TX networks
- 500-sheet input tray (tray 3)
- Automatic two-sided (duplex) printing

3

ENWW Printer at a glance

# Features at a glance

Feature	Description
Performance	460 MHz processor
User interface	Control-panel help
	Show Me How help topics in the control panel
	HP Easy Printer Care software (a Web-based status and troubleshooting tool)
	Windows® and Macintosh printer drivers
	<ul> <li>Embedded Web server to gain access to support and to order supplies (administrator tool for network-connected models only)</li> </ul>
Printer drivers	HP PCL 5e
	HP PCL 6
	PostScript® 3 emulation
Resolution	<ul> <li>FastRes 1200—produces 1200-dots-per-inch (dpi) print quality for fast, high-quality printing of business text and graphics</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>ProRes 1200—produces 1200-dpi printing for the best quality in line art and graphic images</li> </ul>
Storage features	Fonts, forms, and other macros
	Job retention
Fonts	80 internal fonts available for both PCL and PostScript 3 emulation
	80 printer-matching screen fonts in TrueType format available with the software solution
	<ul> <li>Additional fonts can be added by installing a CompactFlash font card.</li> </ul>
Accessories	<ul> <li>Optional 500-sheet input tray (tray 3) (standard on the HP LaserJet 5200tn and HP LaserJet 5200dtn printers)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Optional duplexer (standard on the HP LaserJet 5200dtn printer)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>100-pin 133 MHz dual inline memory modules (DIMMs)</li> </ul>
	CompactFlash cards
Connectivity	IEEE 1284-compliant parallel connection
	Hi-Speed USB 2.0 connection
	<ul> <li>HP Jetdirect full-featured embedded print server (standard on the HP LaserJet 5200n, HP LaserJet 5200tn, and HP LaserJet 5200dtn printers)</li> </ul>
	HP Web Jetadmin software
	Enhanced input/output (EIO) slot
Environmental features	Sleep delay setting
	ENERGY STAR® qualified

4 Chapter 1 Printer basics ENWW

Feature	De	Description	
Supplies	•	The supplies status page contains information about toner level, page count, and estimated pages remaining.	
	•	The printer checks for and authentic HP print cartridge at cartridge installation.	
	•	nternet-enabled supply-ordering capabilities (using HP Easy Printer Care software)	
Accessibility	•	The online user guide is compatible with text screen-readers.	
	•	The print cartridge can be installed and removed by using one hand.	
	•	All doors and covers can be opened by using one hand.	
	•	Media can be loaded in tray 1 by using one hand.	

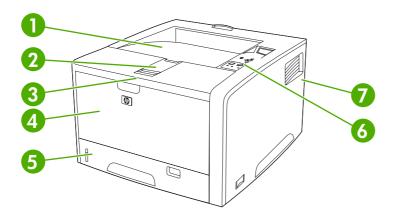
ENWW Features at a glance 5

# Walkaround

6

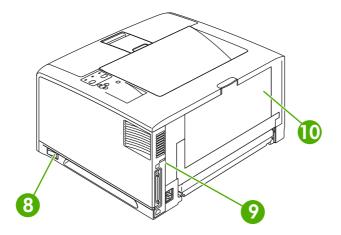
# **Printer parts**

Before using the printer, familiarize yourself with the parts of the printer.



1	Top output bin
2	Long-media extension
3	Latch to open the front cover (provides access to the print cartridge)
4	Tray 1 (pull to open)
5	Tray 2
6	Control panel
7	Right-side cover (provides access to DIMMs and CompactFlash cards)

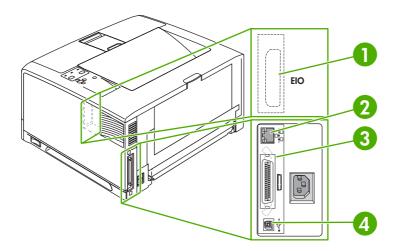
Chapter 1 Printer basics ENWW



- 8 On/off switch
- 9 Interface ports (see Interface ports)
- 10 Rear output bin (pull to open)

# Interface ports

The printer has one EIO slot and three ports for connecting to a computer or a network.



- 1 EIO slot
- 2 Network connection (HP Laserjet 5200n, 5200tn, and 5200dtn printers only)
- 3 IEEE 1284B-compliant parallel connection
- 4 Hi-Speed USB 2.0 connection

ENWW Walkaround

7

### **Printer software**

The printing-system software is included with the printer. See the getting started guide for installation instructions.

The printing system includes software for end users and network administrators, and printer drivers for access to the printer features and communication with the computer.



**NOTE** For a list of printer drivers and updated HP printer software, go to <a href="www.hp.com/go/go/software">www.hp.com/go/go/go/software</a>.

#### **Printer drivers**

Printer drivers allow you to gain access to the printer features and allow the computer to communicate with the printer (using a printer language). Check the installation notes and readme files on the printer CD for additional software and languages.

The HP LaserJet 5200 printer uses the PCL 5e, PCL 6, and PostScript 3 emulation printer description language (PDL) drivers.

- Use the PCL 6 printer driver for the best overall performance.
- Use the PCL 5 printer driver for general office printing.
- Use the PS driver for printing from PostScript-based programs, for compatibility with PostScript Level 3 needs, or for PS flash font support.

Operating system <sup>1</sup>	PCL 5e	PCL 6	PS 3 emulation
Windows 98, Windows Millennium (Me)	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>
Windows 2000 <sup>2</sup>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>
Windows XP (32-bit) <sup>3</sup>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>
Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>
Windows Server 2003 (64-bit)	<b>/</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>V</b>
Mac OS X V10.2 and later			<b>V</b>

Not all printer features are available from all drivers or operating systems.

The printer drivers include online Help that has instructions for common printing tasks and also describes the buttons, checkboxes, and drop-down lists that are in the printer driver.

#### **Driver Autoconfiguration**

The HP LaserJet PCL 6 and PCL 5e drivers for Windows and the PS drivers for Windows 2000 and Windows XP feature automatic discovery and driver configuration for printer accessories at the time of installation. Some accessories that the Driver Autoconfiguration supports are the duplexing unit, optional paper trays, and dual inline memory modules (DIMMs). If the environment supports

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> For Windows 2000 and Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), download the PCL 5 driver from <a href="www.hp.com/go/lj5200\_software">www.hp.com/go/lj5200\_software</a>.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> For Windows XP (64-bit), download the PCL 6 driver from <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/lj5200">www.hp.com/go/lj5200</a> software.

bidirectional communication, the installer presents Driver Autoconfiguration as an installable component by default for a typical installation and for a custom installation.

#### **Update Now**

If you have modified the configuration of the HP LaserJet 5200 printer since installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication. Click the **Update Now** button to automatically reflect the new configuration in the driver.



**NOTE** The **Update Now** feature is not supported in environments where shared Windows NT® 4.0, Windows 2000, or Windows XP clients are connected to Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, or Windows XP hosts.

#### **HP Driver Preconfiguration**

HP Driver Preconfiguration is a software architecture and set of tools that you can use to customize and distribute HP software in managed corporate printing environments. Using HP Driver Preconfiguration, information technology (IT) administrators can preconfigure the printing and device defaults for HP printer drivers before installing the drivers in the network environment. For more information, see the *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide*, which is available at <a href="www.hp.com/support/li5200">www.hp.com/support/li5200</a>.

#### **Additional drivers**

The following drivers are not included on the CD, but are available from <a href="www.hp.com/go/lj5200">www.hp.com/go/lj5200</a> software.

- UNIX® model scripts
- Linux drivers

ENWW Printer software

9

## **Opening the printer drivers**

Operating System	To change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	To change the default settings for all print jobs	To change the product configuration settings	
Windows 98 and Me	On the File menu in the software program, click  Print.	Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers.	Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers.	
	<ol> <li>Select the driver, and then click <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>	2. Right-click the driver icon, and then select <b>Properties</b> .	2. Right-click the driver icon, and then select <b>Properties</b> .	
	The steps can vary; this procedure is most common.		3. Click the <b>Configure</b> tab.	
Windows 2000, XP, and Server 2003	On the <b>File</b> menu in the software program, click <b>Print</b> .	Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers or Printers and Faxes.	Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers or Printers and Faxes.	
	Select the driver, and then click <b>Properties</b> or <b>Preferences</b> .	Right-click the driver icon, and then select <b>Printing Preferences</b> .	Right-click the driver icon, and then select <b>Properties</b> .	
	The steps can vary; this procedure is most common.	Treferences.	Click the <b>Device Settings</b> tab.	
Mac OS X V10.2 or later	On the File menu, click     Print.	On the <b>File</b> menu, click <b>Print</b> .	In the Finder, on the <b>Go</b> menu, click <b>Applications</b> .	
	<ol><li>Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus.</li></ol>	<ol><li>Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus.</li></ol>	<ol> <li>Open Utilities, and then open Print Center (Mac OS X V10.2) or Printer Setup Utility (Mac OS X</li> </ol>	
		<ol> <li>On the Presets pop-up menu, click Save as and type a name for the preset.</li> </ol>	V10.3 or Mac OS X V10.4).  3. Click on the print queue.	
		These settings are saved in the <b>Presets</b> menu. To use the new	4. On the <b>Printers</b> menu, click <b>Show Info</b> .	
		settings, you must select the saved preset option every time you open a program and print.	5. Click the Installable Options menu.	
			NOTE Configuration settings might not be available in Classic mode.	

## **Software for Macintosh computers**

The HP installer provides PostScript® Printer Description (PPD) files, Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs), and the HP Printer Utility for use with Macintosh computers.

For network connections, use the embedded Web server (EWS) to configure the printer. See <a href="Embedded Web server"><u>Embedded Web server</u></a>.

10 Chapter 1 Printer basics ENWW

The printing system software includes the following components:

#### PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files

The PPDs, in combination with the Apple PostScript printer drivers, provide access to printer features. Use the Apple PostScript printer driver that comes with the computer.

#### HP Printer Utility

Use the HP Printer Utility to set up printer features that are not available in the printer driver:

- Name the printer.
- Assign the printer to a zone on the network.
- Assign an internet protocol (IP) address to the printer.
- Download files and fonts.
- Configure the printer for IP or AppleTalk printing.

You can use the HP Printer Utility when your printer uses a universal serial bus (USB) cable or is connected to a TCP/IP-based network. For more information, see <u>Using the HP Printer Utility</u> for <u>Macintosh</u>.



**NOTE** The HP Printer Utility is supported for Mac OS X V10.2 or later.

#### Installing Macintosh printing system software for networks

- 1. Connect the network cable between the HP Jetdirect print server and a network port.
- 2. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive. If the CD does not run automatically, double-click the CD icon on the desktop.
- 3. Double-click the **Installer** icon in the HP LaserJet Installer folder.
- **4.** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- On the computer hard drive, open Applications, open Utilities, and then open Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.



**NOTE** If you are using Mac OS X V10.3 or Mac OS X V10.4, then the **Printer Setup Utility** has replaced the **Print Center**.

- Click Add Printer.
- Select Rendezvous as the connection type.
- 8. Select your printer from the list.
- Click Add Printer.
- 10. Close the Print Center or the Printer Setup Utility.

ENWW Printer software 11

#### Installing Macintosh printing system software for direct connections (USB)



**NOTE** Macintosh computers do *not* support parallel port connections.

The Apple PostScript driver must be installed in order to use the PPD files. Use the Apple PostScript driver that came with your Macintosh computer.

- 1. Connect a USB cable between the USB port on the printer and the USB port on the computer. Use a standard 2-meter (6.56-foot) USB cable.
- 2. Insert the printer CD into the CD-ROM drive and run the installer. If the CD menu not run automatically, double-click the CD icon on the desktop.
- Double-click the Installer icon in the HP LaserJet Installer folder.
- **4.** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
  - USB queues are created automatically when the printer is attached to the computer. However, the queue will use a generic PPD if the installer has not been run before the USB cable is connected. Complete the following steps to change the queue PPD.
- Open the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.
- 6. Select the correct printer queue, and then click **Show Info** to open the **Printer Info** dialog box.
- 7. In the pop-up menu, select **Printer Model**, and then, in the pop-up menu in which **Generic** is selected, select the correct PPD for the printer.
- 8. Print a test page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.
  - If installation fails, reinstall the software. If this fails, see the installation notes or late-breaking readme files on the printer CD or the flyer that came in the printer box for help.

#### To remove software from Macintosh operating systems

To remove the software from a Macintosh computer, drag the PPD files to the trash can.

#### Software for networks

For a summary of available HP network installation and configuration software solutions, see the *HP Jetdirect Embedded Print Server Administrator's Guide*. You can find this guide on the printer CD.

#### **HP Web Jetadmin**

12

HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool for HP Jetdirect-connected printers within your intranet, and it should be installed only on the network administrator's computer.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and for the latest list of supported host systems, visit <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin">www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin</a>.

When installed on a host server, any client can gain access to HP Web Jetadmin by using a supported Web browser (such as Microsoft® Internet Explorer 4.x or Netscape Navigator 4.x or later) by navigating to the HP Web Jetadmin host.

Chapter 1 Printer basics ENWW

#### UNIX

For HP-UX and Solaris networks, go to <a href="www.hp.com/support/net\_printing">www.hp.com/support/net\_printing</a> to download the HP Jetdirect printer installer for UNIX.

#### Linux

For information, go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting">www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting</a>.

#### **Utilities**

The printer is equipped with several utilities that make it easy to monitor and manage the printer on a network.

#### **HP Easy Printer Care software**

The HP Easy Printer Care software is a program that you can use for the following tasks:

- Checking the printer status
- Checking the supplies status
- Setting up alerts
- Viewing printer documentation
- Gaining access to troubleshooting and maintenance tools

You can view the HP Easy Printer Care software when the printer is directly connected to your computer or when it is connected to a network. Perform a complete software installation in order to use the HP Easy Printer Care software.

#### **Embedded Web server**

The printer is equipped with an embedded Web server, which provides access to information about printer and network activities. This information appears in a Web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator.

The embedded Web server resides on the printer. It is not loaded on a network server.

The embedded Web server provides an interface to the printer that anyone who has a network-connected computer and a standard Web browser can use. No special software is installed or configured, but you must have a supported Web browser on your computer. To gain access to the embedded Web server, type the IP address for the printer in the address line of the browser. (To find the IP address, print a configuration page. For more information about printing a configuration page, see <u>Using printer information pages</u>.)

For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server, see <u>Using</u> the embedded Web server.

ENWW Printer software 13

## Other components and utilities

Windows		Ma	Macintosh OS		
•	Software installer — automates the printing system installation	•	PostScript Printer Description files (PPDs) — use with the Apple PostScript drivers that come with the Mac OS		
•	Online Web registration	•	The HP Printer Utility—change printer settings, view status, and set up printer-event notification from a Mac. This utility is supported for Mac OS X V10.2 and later.		

Chapter 1 Printer basics ENWW

14

# Selecting print media

This printer accepts a variety of media, such as cut-sheet paper, including up to 100% recycled fiber content paper; envelopes; labels; transparencies; and custom-size paper. Properties such as weight, composition, grain, and moisture content are important factors that affect printer performance and output quality. Paper that does not meet the guidelines that are outlined in this manual can cause the following problems:

- Poor print quality
- Increased jams
- Premature wear on the printer, requiring repair



**NOTE** Some paper might meet all of the guidelines in this manual and still not produce satisfactory results. This might be the result of improper handling, unacceptable temperature and humidity levels, or other variables over which Hewlett-Packard has no control. Before purchasing large quantities of media, make sure that it meets the requirements that are specified in this user guide and in the *HP LaserJet Printer Family Print Media Guide*, which is available for download at <a href="http://www.hp.com/support/ljpaperguide">http://www.hp.com/support/ljpaperguide</a>. Always test paper before buying large quantities.



**CAUTION** Using media that does not meet HP specifications can cause problems for the printer, requiring repair. This repair is not covered by the HP warranty or service agreements.

## Supported media sizes

Media size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2/Tray 3	Automatic duplex <sup>1</sup>	Manaul duplex
Letter	216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in) 60 to 199 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 53 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
Letter-R	279 x 216 mm (11 x 8.5 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
A4	211 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
A4-R	297 x 211 mm (11.7 x 8.3 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Legal	216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
Executive	185 x 267 mm (7.3 x 10.5 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Executive (JIS)	216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
A5	147 x 211 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
B5 (JIS)	183 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
11 x 17	279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>✓</b>

ENWW Selecting print media 15

Media size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2/Tray 3	Automatic duplex <sup>1</sup>	Manaul duplex
А3	297 x 419 mm (11.7 x 16.5 in)	<b>/</b>	V	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>
B4 (JIS)	257 x 363 mm (10.1 x 14.3 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>
8K	269 x 391 mm (10.6 x 15.4 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
8K	259 x 368 mm (10.2 x 14.5 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
8K	273 x 394 mm (10.75 x 15.5 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
16K	184 x 260 mm (7.24 x 10.24 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
16K	195 x 270 mm (7.68 x 10.63 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
16K	273 x 197 mm (10.75 x 7.75 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Statement	140 x 216 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>		<b>✓</b>
12 x 18	305 x 457 mm (12 x 18 in)	<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.14 x 5.83 in)	<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>
RA3	305 x 430 mm (12 x 16.93 in)	<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>
В6	128 x 182 mm (5.1 x 7.2 in)	<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>
S Postcard (JIS)	100 x 148 mm (3.94 x 5.83 in)	<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>
D Postcard (JIS)	148 x 200 mm (5.83 x 7.87 in)	<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>
Envelope #10	105 x 241 mm (4.13 x 9.5 in)	<b>/</b>			
Envelope Monarch	98 x 191 mm (3.87 x 7.5 in)	<b>/</b>			
Envelope C5	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9 in)	<b>/</b>			
Envelope DL	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in)	<b>/</b>			
Envelope B5	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in)	<b>/</b>			
Custom		<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>

Automatic two-sided printing (duplexing) requires an HP LaserJet printer that is equipped with the optional duplexer. For more information about automatic duplexing and manual duplexing, see <a href="Printing on both sides">Printing on both sides (duplexing)</a>.

For more information about using print media, see <a href="Paper specifications">Paper specifications</a>.

# Supported media types

Media type	Weight	Tray 1	Tray 2/Tray 3	Automatic duplex <sup>1</sup>	Manual duplex
Plain	60 to 199 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 53 lb)	<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>
Plain	60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Preprinted	60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>/</b>
Letterhead	60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Transparency	0.10 to 0.14 mm thick (4.7 to 5 mils thick)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>		
Prepunched	60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Bond	60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Recycled	60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Envelopes	75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 to 24 lb)	<b>/</b>			
Colored paper	60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>
Labels	0.10 to 0.14 mm thick (4.7 to 5 mils thick)	<b>/</b>	<b>/</b>		
Cardstock	135 to 176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (36 to 47 lb)	<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>
Rough		<b>/</b>			
Light	60 to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 20 lb)	<b>/</b>			<b>V</b>
Vellum	60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb)	<b>/</b>			
Tough Paper	0.10 to 0.14 mm thick (4.7 to 5 mils thick)	<b>/</b>			
Postcard	135 to 176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (36 to 47 lb)	<b>/</b>			<b>V</b>
Custom	60 to 199 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 53 lb)	<b>/</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>

Automatic two-sided printing (duplexing) requires an HP LaserJet printer that is equipped with the optional duplexer. For more information about automatic duplexing and manual duplexing, see <a href="Printing on both sides (duplexing">Printing on both sides (duplexing)</a>.

ENWW Selecting print media 17

Chapter 1 Printer basics ENWW

18

# 2 Control panel

This section explains the printer control panel and menus:

- Overview
- Control-panel layout
- Using the control-panel menus
- Show Me How menu
- Retrieve Job menu
- <u>Information menu</u>
- Paper Handling menu
- Configure Device menu
- Diagnostics menu
- Service menu
- Changing printer-control-panel configuration settings

ENWW 19

### **Overview**

You can perform most routine printing tasks from the computer by using the program or printer driver. These two methods are the most convenient way to control the printer, and they will override the printer-control-panel settings. See the Help file for your program, or, for more information about gaining access to the printer driver, see Opening the printer drivers.

You can also control the printer by changing settings at the printer control panel. Use the control panel to gain access to printer features that the program or printer driver do not support.

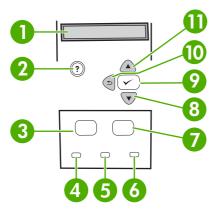
You can print a menu map at the printer control panel that shows the settings with the currently selected values (see <u>Using printer information pages</u>).

Some menus or menu items appear only if certain options are installed in the printer.

# **Control-panel layout**

The control-panel display gives you complete, timely information about the printer and print jobs. Menus provide access to printer functions and detailed information.

The message and prompt areas of the display alert you to the state of the printer and tell you how to respond.



Number	Button or light	Function		
1	Control-panel display	Shows status information, menus, help information, and error messages.		
2	Help (?) button	Provides information about the message on the control-panel display.		
3	Menu button	Opens and closes the menus.		
4	Ready light	<ul> <li>On: The printer is online and ready to accept data to print.</li> <li>Off: The printer cannot accept data because it is offline (paused) or has experienced an error.</li> </ul>		
		Blinking: The printer is going offline. The printer stops processing the current print job and expels all of the active pages from the paper path.		
5	Data light	On: The printer has data to print, but is waiting to receive all of the data.		
		Off: The printer has no data to print.		
		Blinking: The printer is processing or printing the data.		
6	Attention light	On: The printer has experienced a problem. Make note of the message on the control-panel display, and then turn the printer off and on. See <a href="Control-panel messages">Control-panel messages</a> for help in resolving problems.		
		Off: The printer is functioning without error.		
		Blinking: Action is required. See the control-panel display.		
7	Stop button	<ul> <li>Cancels the current print job in process and expels all of the active pages from the paper path. The time that it takes to cancel the job depends on the size of the print job. (Press the button only once.) Also clears continuable errors that are associated with the canceled job.</li> </ul>		

ENWW Control-panel layout 21

Number	Button or light	Function		
		NOTE The control-panel lights cycle while the print job is cleared from both the printer and the computer, and then the printer returns to the Ready state.		
8	Down ( ) button	Navigates to the next item in the list, or decreases the value of numeric items		
9	Select (✓) button	<ul> <li>Clears an error condition when the condition is clearable</li> <li>Saves the selected value for an item</li> <li>Performs the action that is associated with the item that is highlighted on the control-panel display</li> </ul>		
10	Back (♣) button	Backs up one level in the menu tree or backs up one numeric entry     Closes menus if held down for more than 1 second		
11	Up ( 🃤 ) button	Navigates to the previous item in the list, or increases the value of numeric items		

## Using the control-panel menus

To gain access to the control-panel menus, complete the steps below.

### To use the menus

- 1. Press Menu.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to navigate the listings.
- 3. Press  $\checkmark$  to select the appropriate option.
- **4.** Press **⇒** to return to the previous level.
- 5. Press Menu to exit the menu.
- 6. Press ? to see additional information about a menu.

The following are the main menus.

Main menus	SHOW ME HOW
	RETRIEVE JOB
	INFORMATION
	PAPER HANDLING
	CONFIGURE DEVICE
	DIAGNOSTICS
	SERVICE

## **Show Me How menu**

Each choice in the **SHOW ME HOW** menu prints a page that provides more information.

Item	Explanation
CLEAR JAMS	Prints a page that shows how to clear media jams.
LOAD TRAYS	Prints a page that shows how to load the printer input trays.
LOAD SPECIAL MEDIA	Prints a page that shows how to load special media, such as envelopes and transparencies.
PRINT BOTH SIDES	Prints a page that shows how to use the two-sided (duplex) printing function.
SUPPORTED PAPER	Prints a page that shows supported media weights and sizes for the printer.
MORE HELP	Prints a page that shows links to additional help on the Web.

## Retrieve Job menu

This menu provides a list of the stored jobs in the printer and access to all the job storage features. You can print or delete these jobs at the printer control panel. See <u>Managing stored jobs</u> for more information about using this menu.



**NOTE** If you turn the printer power off, all stored jobs are deleted.

Item	Values	Explanation
USER [X]	[JOBNAME]	USER [X]: The name of the person who sent the job.
	ALL PRIVATE JOBS	[JOBNAME]: The name of the job stored in the printer. Select one of your jobs or all of your private jobs that were
	NO STORED JOBS	assigned a personal identification number (PIN) in the printer driver.
		<ul> <li>PRINT: Prints the selected job. PIN REQUIRED TO PRINT: A prompt that appears for jobs that were assigned a PIN in the printer driver. You must enter the PIN to print the job. COPIES: You can select the number of copies that you want to print (1 to 32000).</li> <li>DELETE: Deletes the selected job from the printer.</li> </ul>
		<b>PIN REQUIRED TO DELETE</b> : A prompt that appears for jobs that were assigned a PIN in the printer driver. You must enter the PIN to delete the job.
		<b>ALL PRIVATE JOBS</b> : Appears if two or more private jobs are stored in the printer. Selecting this item prints all of the private jobs that are stored in the printer for that user, after the correct PIN is entered.
		<b>NO STORED JOBS</b> : Indicates that no stored jobs are available to print or delete.

ENWW Retrieve Job menu 25

## Information menu

26

The **INFORMATION** menu contains printer information pages that give details about the printer and its configuration. Scroll to the information page that you want, and then press  $\checkmark$ .

For more information about any of the printer information pages, see <u>Using printer information pages</u>.

Item	Explanation
PRINT MENU MAP	Prints the control panel menu map that shows the layout and current settings for the printer control-panel menu items.
PRINT CONFIGURATION	Prints the current printer configuration. If an HP Jetdirect print server is installed, an HP Jetdirect configuration page will print out as well.
PRINT SUPPLIES STATUS PAGE	Prints a supplies status page that shows the supplies levels for the printer, an approximate number of pages remaining, cartridge-usage information, the serial number, a page count, and ordering information. This page is available only if you are using genuine HP supplies.
PRINT USAGE PAGE	Prints a page that shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer, lists whether they were one-sided or two-sided, and shows a page count.
PRINT FILE DIRECTORY	Prints a file directory that shows information for all installed mass-storage devices. This item appears only if a mass-storage device that contains a recognized file system is installed in the printer, such as an optional CompactFlash card. For more information, see <a href="Installing printer memory">Installing printer memory</a> .
PRINT PCL FONT LIST	Prints a PCL font list that shows all the PCL fonts that are currently available to the printer.
PRINT PS FONT LIST	Prints a PS font list that shows all the PS fonts that are currently available to the printer.

Chapter 2 Control panel ENWW

## Paper Handling menu

If paper-handling settings are correctly configured at the printer control panel, you can print by selecting the type and size of media in the program or the printer driver. For more information about configuring for media types and sizes, see <a href="Controlling print jobs">Controlling print jobs</a>. For more information about supported media types and sizes, see <a href="Supported media sizes">Supported media sizes</a> and <a href="Paper specifications">Paper specifications</a>.

Some items on this menu (such as duplex and manual feed) are available in the program or the printer driver (if the appropriate driver is installed). Program and printer-driver settings override control-panel settings. For more information, see <u>Printer drivers</u>.

Item	Values	Explanation
TRAY 1 SIZE	List of available media sizes for tray 1	Use this item to set the value to correspond with the media size that is currently loaded in tray 1. See <a href="Supported media sizes">Supported media sizes</a> for a list of available sizes. The default setting is ANY SIZE.
		<b>ANY SIZE</b> : If both the type and size for tray 1 are set to <b>ANY</b> , the printer will pull media from tray 1 first if media is loaded in the tray.
		A size other than <b>ANY SIZE</b> : The printer does not pull from this tray unless the type or size of the print job matches the type and size that is loaded in this tray.
TRAY 1 TYPE	List of available media types for tray 1	Use this item to set the value to correspond with the type of media that is currently loaded in tray 1. See <u>Supported media sizes</u> for a list of available types. The default setting is <b>ANY TYPE</b> .
		<b>ANY TYPE</b> : If both the type and size for tray 1 are set to <b>ANY</b> , the printer will pull media from tray 1 first if the media is loaded in the tray.
		A type other than <b>ANY TYPE</b> : The printer does not pull from this tray.
TRAY [N] SIZE	List of available media sizes for tray 2 or optional tray 3	The tray automatically detects the media size based on the media-size wheel setting in the tray. The default setting is either LTR (letter) for 100 V engines or A4 for 200 V engines.
TRAY [N] TYPE	List of available media types for tray 2 or optional tray 3	Sets the value to correspond with the media type that is currently loaded in tray 2 or optional tray 3. The default setting is <b>ANY TYPE</b> .
TRAY [N] CUSTOM	UNIT OF MEASURE	This item appears only if a tray is set to a custom size.
	X DIMENSION	UNIT OF MEASURE: Use this option to select the unit of
	Y DIMENSION	measure ( <b>INCHES</b> or <b>MILLIMETERS</b> ) to use when you set custom paper sizes for the specified tray.
		X DIMENSION: Use this item to set the measurement of the width of the paper (measurement from side to side in the tray). The options are 3.0 to 12.28 INCHES or 76 to 312 MM.
		Y DIMENSION: Use this item to set the measurement of the length of the paper (measurement from front to back in the tray). The options are <b>5.0 to 18.5 INCHES</b> or <b>127 to 470 MM</b> .
		After the <b>Y DIMENSION</b> value is selected, a summary screen appears. This screen contains feedback that summarizes all

ENWW Paper Handling menu 27

Item	Values	Explanation
		of the information that was specified on the previous three screens, such as <b>TRAY 1 SIZE= 8 x 16 INCHES</b> , <b>Setting saved</b> .

## **Configure Device menu**

This menu contains administrative functions. The **CONFIGURE DEVICE** menu allows the user to change the default printing settings, adjust the print quality, and change the system configuration and I/O options.

## **Printing submenu**

Some items on this menu are available in the program or printer driver (if the appropriate driver is installed). Program and printer-driver settings override control-panel settings. In general, it is better to change these settings in the printer driver, if applicable.

Item	Values	Explanation
COPIES	1 to 32000	Sets the default number of copies by selecting any number from 1 to 32000. Use ▲ or ▼ to select the number of copies. This setting applies only to print jobs that do not have the number of copies specified in the program or printer driver, such as a UNIX or Linux program.
		The default setting is 1.
		NOTE It is best to set the number of copies in the program or printer driver. (Program and printer-driver settings override control-panel settings.)
DEFAULT PAPER SIZE	Displays a list of available media sizes.	Sets the default image size for paper and envelopes. This setting applies to the print jobs that do not have a paper size specified in the program or printer driver. The default setting is <b>LETTER</b> .
DEFAULT CUSTOM	UNIT OF MEASURE	Sets the default custom paper size for tray 1. This menu
PAPER SIZE	X DIMENSION	appears only if the media-size switch in the selected tray is set to <b>CUSTOM</b> .
	Y DIMENSION	<b>UNIT OF MEASURE</b> : Use this option to select the unit of measure ( <b>INCHES</b> or <b>MILLIMETERS</b> ) to use when you set customer paper sizes for the tray 1.
		X DIMENSION: Use this item to set the measurement of the width of the paper (measurement from side to side in the tray). The options are 3.0 to 12.28 INCHES or 76 to 312 MM.
		Y DIMENSION: Use this item to set the measurement of the length of the paper (measurement from front to back in the tray). The options are 5.0 to 18.50 INCHES or 127 to 470 MM.
DUPLEX	OFF	Appears only for printers that include a built-in duplexer. Set the value to <b>ON</b> to print on both sides (duplex) or <b>OFF</b> to print on
	ON	one side (simplex) of a sheet of paper.
		The default setting is <b>OFF</b> .
DUPLEX BINDING	LONG EDGE	Changes the binding edge for duplex printing. The menu item appears only if the printer includes a built-in duplexer and
	SHORT EDGE	DUPLEX=ON.
		The default setting is LONG EDGE.
OVERRIDE A4/LETTER	NO	Allows the printer to print an A4-size job on letter-size paper if A4-size paper is not loaded in the printer (or vice versa).

Item	Values	Explanation
	YES	The default setting is <b>YES</b> .
MANUAL FEED	OFF ON	Feeds the paper manually from tray 1, rather than automatically from a tray. If <b>MANUAL FEED=ON</b> and tray 1 is empty, the printer goes offline when it receives a print job. <b>MANUALLY FEED [PAPER SIZE]</b> appears on the printer control-panel display.
		The default setting is <b>OFF</b> .
COURIER FONT	REGULAR	Selects the version of Courier font to use:
	DARK	<b>REGULAR</b> : The internal Courier font that is available on the HP LaserJet 4 series printers.
		<b>DARK</b> : The internal Courier font that is available on the HP LaserJet III series printers.
		The default setting is <b>REGULAR</b> .
WIDE A4	NO YES	Changes the number of characters that can be printed on a single line of A4-size paper.
	123	NO: Up to 78 10-pitch characters can be printed on one line.
		YES: Up to 80 10-pitch characters can be printed on one line.
		The default setting is <b>NO</b> .
PRINT PS ERRORS	OFF	Determines whether a PS error page prints or not.
	ON	<b>OFF</b> : PS error page never prints.
		<b>ON</b> : PS error page prints when PS errors occur.
		The default setting is <b>OFF</b> .
PRINT PDF ERRORS	OFF	Determines whether a PDF error page prints or not.
	ON	<b>OFF</b> : PDF error page never prints.
		ON: PDF error page prints when PDF errors occur.
		The default setting is <b>OFF</b> .
PCL SUBMENU	FORM LENGTH	<b>FORM LENGTH</b> : Sets vertical spacing from 5 to 128 lines for default paper size.
	ORIENTATION	ORIENTATION: Allows you to select default page orientation
	FONT SOURCE	as LANDSCAPE or PORTRAIT.
	FONT NUMBER	NOTE It is best to set the page orientation in the
	FONT PITCH	program or printer driver. (Program and printer-driver settings override control-panel settings.)
	SYMBOL SET	
	APPEND CR TO LF	FONT SOURCE: Allows you to select the font source as INTERNAL, CARD SLOT 1 or 2, or EIO DISK.
	SUPPRESS BLANK PAGES	FONT NUMBER: The printer assigns a number to each font and lists the numbers on the PCL Font List. The font number
	MEDIA SOURCE MAPPING	appears in the Font # column of the printout. The range is 0 to 999.

Item	Values	Explanation
		<b>FONT PITCH</b> : Selects the font pitch. This item might not appear, depending on the font selected. The range is 0.44 to 99.99.
		<b>SYMBOL SET</b> : Selects any one of several available symbol sets at the printer control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. PC-8 or PC-850 is recommended for line-draw characters.
		APPEND CR TO LF: Select YES to append a carriage return to each line feed that the printer encountered in backward-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line using only the line feed control code. Use this option to append the required carriage return to each line feed.
		<b>SUPPRESS BLANK PAGES</b> : When generating your own PCL, extra form feeds are included that would cause one or more blank pages to be printed. Select <b>YES</b> for form feeds to be ignored if the page is blank.
		MEDIA SOURCE MAPPING: Allows you to select and maintain trays by number when you are not using the printer driver or when the software program has no option for tray selection. CLASSIC: Tray numbering is based on LaserJet 4 and older models. STANDARD: Tray numbering is based on newer LaserJet models.

## **Print Quality submenu**

Some items on this menu are available in the program or printer driver (if the appropriate driver is installed). Program and printer-driver settings override control-panel settings. For more information, see <u>Printer drivers</u>. In general, it is best to change these settings in the printer driver, if applicable.

Item	Values	Explanation
SET REGISTRATION	PRINT TEST PAGE	Shifts the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom, and left to right. You can also align the image that is printed on the front with the image that is
	SOURCE	
	ADJUST TRAY [N]	printed on the back. Allows for one-sided and two-sided printing alignment.
		<b>PRINT TEST PAGE</b> : Prints a test page that shows the current registration settings.
		<b>SOURCE</b> : Selects the tray for which you want to print the test page.
		<b>ADJUST TRAY [N]</b> : Sets the registration for the specified tray, where [N] is the number of the tray. A selection

Item	Values	Explanation
		appears for each tray that is installed, and registration must be set for each tray.
		<ul> <li>X1 SHIFT: Registration of the image on the paper from side to side, as the paper lies in the tray. For duplexing, this side is the second side (back) of the paper.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>X2 SHIFT: Registration of the image on the paper from side to side, as the paper lies in the tray, for the first side (front) of a duplexed page. This item appears only if the printer includes a built-in duplexer and DUPLEX is ON. Set the X1 SHIFT first.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Y SHIFT: Registration of the image on the paper from top to bottom as the paper lies in the tray.</li> </ul>
		The default setting for <b>SOURCE</b> is <b>TRAY 2</b> . The default setting for <b>ADJUST TRAY 1</b> and <b>ADJUST TRAY 2</b> is <b>0</b> .
FUSER MODES	List of available fuser modes	Configures the fuser mode associated with each media type.
		Change the fuser mode only if you are experiencing problems printing on certain media types. After you select a type of media, you can select a fuser mode that is available for that type. The printer supports the following modes:
		NORMAL: Used for most types of paper.
		HIGH2: Used for paper that has a special or rough finish.
		HIGH1: Used for rough paper.
		LOW3: Used for transparencies.
		<b>LOW2</b> : Used for lightweight media. Use this mode if you are having problems with curled paper.
		LOW1: Use this mode if you are experiencing wrinkled media.
		The default fuser mode is <b>NORMAL</b> for all print media types except transparencies ( <b>LOW3</b> ) and rough paper ( <b>HIGH1</b> ).
		CAUTION Do not change the fuser mode for transparencies. Failure to use the LOW3 setting while printing transparencies can result in permanent damage to the printer and fuser. Always select Transparencies as the type in the printer driver and set the tray type at the printer control panel to TRANSPARENCY.
		When selected, <b>RESTORE MODES</b> resets the fuser mode for each media type back to its default setting.
OPTIMIZE	List of parameters	Optimizes certain parameters for all jobs rather than (or in addition to) optimizing by paper type.
RESOLUTION	300	Selects the resolution. All values print at the same speed.
	600	<b>300</b> : Produces draft print quality and can be used for compatibility with the HP LaserJet III family of printers.

Item	Values	Explanation
	FASTRES 1200	<b>600</b> : Produces high print quality for text and can be used for compatibility with the HP LaserJet 4 family of printers.
	PRORES 1200	FASTRES 1200: Produces 1200-dpi print quality for fast, high-quality printing of business text and graphics.
		<b>PRORES 1200</b> : Produces 1200-dpi print quality for fast, high-quality printing of line art and graphic images.
		NOTE It is best to change the resolution in the program or printer driver. (Program and printer-driver settings override control-panel settings.)
		The default setting is <b>FASTRES 1200</b> .
RET	OFF LIGHT	Use the Resolution Enhancement technology (REt) setting to produce print with smooth angles, curves, and edges.
	MEDIUM DARK	REt does not affect print quality if the print resolution is set to FastRes 1200 or ProRes 1200. All other print resolutions benefit from REt.
	DAKK	NOTE It is best to change the REt setting in the program or printer driver. (Program and printer-driver settings override control-panel settings.)
		The default setting is <b>MEDIUM</b> .
ECONOMODE	ON OFF	Use EconoMode to use less toner per page. Selecting <b>ON</b> extends the life of the toner supply and reduces the cost per page. However, it also reduces print quality. The printed image is lighter, but it is adequate for printing drafts or proofs.
		NOTE It is best to turn EconoMode on or off in the program or printer driver. (Program and printer-driver settings override control-panel settings.)
		The default setting is <b>OFF</b> .
		CAUTION HP does not recommend full-time use of EconoMode. If EconoMode is used full-time, the toner supply might outlast the mechanical parts in the print cartridge.
TONER DENSITY	1 to 5	Lighten or darken the print on the page by setting the toner density. Select a setting ranging from 1 (light) to 5 (dark). The default setting of 3 usually produces the best results.
CREATE CLEANING PAGE	There is no value to select.	Press ✓ to print a cleaning page (for cleaning toner from the fuser). Follow the instructions on the cleaning page. For more information, see <u>Cleaning the printer</u> .
PROCESS CLEANING PAGE	There is no value to select.	This item is available only after a cleaning page has been created. Follow the instructions that are printed on the cleaning page. The cleaning process might take up to 2.5 minutes.

## System Setup submenu

Items on this menu affect printer behavior. Configure the printer according to your printing needs.

Item	Values	Explanation
DATE/TIME	DATE	Sets the date and time settings.
	DATE FORMAT	
	TIME	
	TIME FORMAT	
JOB STORAGE LIMIT	1 to 100	Specifies the number of quick copy jobs that can be stored on the printer.
		The default setting is 32.
JOB HELD TIMEOUT	OFF	Sets the amount of time that held jobs are kept before being
	1 HOUR	automatically deleted from the queue.
	4 HOURS	The default setting is <b>OFF</b> .
	1 DAY	
	1 WEEK	
SHOW ADDRESS	AUTO	Defines whether or not the printer address will be shown on
	OFF	the display if the device is connected to a network. If <b>AUTO</b> is selected the IP Address of the device appears with the <b>Ready</b> message.
		The default setting is <b>AUTO</b> .
TRAY BEHAVIOR	USE REQUESTED TRAY	USE REQUESTED TRAY: Determines whether the printer
	MANUALLY FEED PROMPT	tries to pull media from a different tray than the one that you selected in the printer driver.
	PS DEFER MEDIA	EXCLUSIVELY: Sets the printer to pull from the tray
	SIZE/TYPE PROMPT	that you selected and not pull from another tray, even if the tray that you selected is empty.
		<ul> <li>FIRST: Sets the printer to pull from the tray that you selected first, but allows the printer to pull from another tray automatically if the tray that you selected is empty.</li> </ul>
		<b>MANUALLY FEED PROMPT</b> : Determines when the printer shows a prompt regarding pulling from tray 1 if your print job does not match the type or size that is loaded in any other tray.
		<ul> <li>ALWAYS: Select this option if you always want to be prompted before the printer pulls from tray 1.</li> </ul>
		UNLESS LOADED: Prompts you only if tray 1 is empty.
		PS DEFER MEDIA: Controls whether the PostScript (PS) or HP paper-handling model is used to print jobs. ENABLED causes PS to defer to the HP paper-handling model. DISABLED uses the PS paper-handling model.

Item	Values	Explanation
		SIZE/TYPE PROMPT: Use this menu item to control whether the tray configuration message and its prompts are shown whenever a tray is opened and closed. These prompts instruct you to set the type or size if the tray is configured for a type or size other than the type or size that is loaded in the tray.
SLEEP DELAY	1 MINUTE 15 MINUTES 30 MINUTES 45 MINUTES 60 MINUTES 90 MINUTES 2 HOURS 4 HOURS	Sets how long the printer remains idle before it enters Sleep mode.  Sleep mode does the following:  Minimizes the amount of power that the printer consumes when it is idle.  Reduces wear on electronic components in the printer (turns off the display backlight, but the display is still readable).  The printer automatically comes out of Sleep mode when you send a print job, press a printer control-panel button, open a tray, or open the top cover.
		The default setting is 1 MINUTES.
WAKE TIME	MONDAY TUESDAY WEDNESDAY THURSDAY	Sets a "wake-up" time for the printer to warm up and calibrate each day. The default for each day is <b>OFF</b> . If you set a wake time, HP recommends setting an extended sleep delay time period, so that the printer will not return to sleep mode soon after waking.
	FRIDAY SATURDAY SUNDAY	
PERSONALITY	AUTO PDF PS PCL	Selects the default printer language (personality). The possible values are determined by which valid languages are installed in the printer.  Normally, you should not change the printer language. If you change it to a specific printer language, the printer will not switch automatically from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to the printer.  The default setting is <b>AUTO</b> .
CLEARABLE WARNINGS	JOB ON	Sets the amount of time that a clearable warning appears of the printer control-panel display.  JOB: The clearable warning message appears until the end of the job that generated the message.  ON: The clearable warning message appears until you pres
AUTO CONTINUE	OFF	Determines how the printer reacts to errors. If the printer is on a network, you probably want to turn <b>AUTO CONTINUE</b> to <b>ON</b> .

Item	Values	Explanation
	ON	<b>ON</b> : If an error occurs that prevents printing, the message appears on the printer control-panel display, and the printer goes offline for 10 seconds before returning online.
		<b>OFF</b> : If an error occurs that prevents printing, the message remains on the printer control-panel display, and the printer remains offline until you press ✓.
		The default setting is <b>ON</b> .
CARTRIDGE LOW	STOP CONTINUE	Determines how the printer behaves if the print cartridge is low. Print quality is not guaranteed if you print after receiving this message.
		<b>STOP</b> : The printer pauses printing until you replace the print cartridge or press ✓ each time you turn the printer on. The message appears until you replace the print cartridge.
		<b>CONTINUE</b> : The printer continues to print, and the message appears until you replace the print cartridge.
		The default setting is <b>CONTINUE</b> .
CARTRIDGE OUT	STOP	Determines how the printer reacts if the print cartridge is empty.
	CONTINUE	<b>STOP</b> : The printer stops printing until you replace the print cartridge.
		CONTINUE: The printer continues to print, and the REPLACE CARTRIDGE message appears until you replace the print cartridge. HP does not guarantee print quality if you select CONTINUE after a REPLACE CARTRIDGE condition. Replace the print cartridge as soon as possible to ensure good print quality.
		If the end of drum life is reached, the printer stops, regardless of the <b>CARTRIDGE OUT</b> setting.
		The default setting is <b>CONTINUE</b> .
JAM RECOVERY	AUTO	Determines how the printer behaves if a jam occurs.
	OFF ON	<b>AUTO</b> : The printer automatically selects the best mode for printer jam recovery (usually <b>ON</b> ).
		<b>OFF</b> : The printer does not reprint pages following a jam. Printing performance might be increased with this setting.
		<b>ON</b> : The printer automatically reprints pages after a jam is cleared.
		The default setting is <b>AUTO</b> .
RAM DISK	AUTO	Determines how the RAM disk is configured.
	OFF	<b>AUTO</b> : Allows the printer to determine the optimal RAM-disk size based on the amount of available memory.
		OFF: The RAM is disabled.

Item	Values	Explanation
		NOTE If you change the setting from OFF to AUTO, the printer automatically reinitializes when it becomes idle.
		The default setting is <b>AUTO</b> .
LANGUAGE	ENGLISH Several	Selects the language for the messages that appear on the printer control-panel display.
	Severai	The default setting is <b>ENGLISH</b> .

### I/O submenu

Items on the I/O (input/output) menu affect the communication between the printer and the computer. If the printer contains an HP Jetdirect print server, you can configure basic networking parameters by using the submenu. These and other parameters can also be configured through HP Web Jetadmin (see <u>Using HP Web Jetadmin software</u>) or other network configuration tools, such as the embedded Web server (see <u>Using the embedded Web server</u>).

Item	Values	Explanation
I/O TIMEOUT	5 to 300	Select the I/O timeout period in seconds.
		Use this setting to adjust timeout for the best performance. If data from other ports appears in the middle of your print job, increase the timeout value.
		The default setting is <b>15</b> .
PARALLEL INPUT	HIGH SPEED	HIGH SPEED: Select YES to enable the printer to accept
	ADVANCED FUNCTIONS	the faster parallel communications that are used for connections with newer computers.
		<b>ADVANCED FUNCTIONS</b> : Turn the bidirectional parallel communication on or off. The default is set for a bidirectional parallel port (IEEE-1284).
		The printer uses this setting to send status messages to the computer. Turning the parallel advanced functions on might slow language switching.
EMBEDDED JETDIRECT	TCP/IP	TCP/IP: Select whether the TCP/IP protocol stack is enabled or disabled. You can set several TCP/IP parameters.
	IPX/SPX	Select the TCP/IP CONFIGURE METHOD to configure the
	APPLETALK	EIO card. For the MANUAL option, set the values for IP ADDRESS, SUBNET MASK, LOCAL GATEWAY, and
	DLC/LLC	DEFAULT GATEWAY.
	SECURE WEB	IPX/SPX: Select whether the IPX/SPX protocol stack (in
	DIAGNOSTICS	Novell NetWare networks, for example) is enabled or disabled.
	RESET SECURITY	APPLETALK: Enable or disable an AppleTalk network.
	LINK SPEED	<b>DLC/LLC</b> : Select whether the DLC/LLC protocol stack is enabled or disabled.
		<b>SECURE WEB</b> : Specify whether the embedded Web server accepts communications by using only secure HTTP (HTTPS) or by using both HTTP and HTTPS.
		<b>DIAGNOSTICS</b> : Use tests to help diagnose network hardware or TCP/IP network connection problems.
		<b>RESET SECURITY</b> : Specify whether the current security settings on the print server are saved or reset to factory defaults.
		<b>LINK SPEED</b> : Select the network link speed and communications mode for the 10/100T print server. To ensure proper communication, the Jetdirect settings must match those of the network.

### Resets submenu

Items on the Resets submenu relate to returning settings to the defaults and changing settings such as Sleep mode.

Item	Values	Explanation
RESTORE FACTORY SETTINGS	There is no value to select.	Performs a simple reset and restores most of the factory (default) settings. This item also clears the input buffer for the active I/O.  CAUTION Restoring memory during a print job cancels the print job.
SLEEP MODE	ON OFF	Turns Sleep mode on or off. Using Sleep mode offers the following advantages:  • Minimizes the amount of power that the printer consumes when it is idle  • Reduces wear on electronic components in the printer (turns off the display backlight, but the display is still readable)  The printer automatically comes out of Sleep mode when you send a print job, press a printer control panel button, open a tray, or open the top cover.  You can set how long the printer remains idle before it enters Sleep mode.  The default setting is ON.

ENWW Configure Device menu

39

## **Diagnostics menu**

Administrators can use this submenu to isolate parts and to troubleshoot jam and print-quality issues.

Item	Values	Explanation
PRINT EVENT LOG	There is no value to select.	Press    to generate a list of the 50 most recent entries in the event log. The printed event log shows error number, page count, error code, and description or personality.
SHOW EVENT LOG	There is no value to select.	Press ✓ to scroll through the contents of the event log at the printer control panel, which lists up to the 50 most recent events. Use ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the event log contents.
PAPER PATH TEST	PRINT TEST PAGE	Generates a test page that is useful for testing the paper- handling features of the printer.
SOURCE DUPLEX COPIES	DUPLEX	PRINT TEST PAGE: Press ✓ to start the paper-path test using the source (tray), destination (output bin), duplex, and number of copies settings that you set in the other items on the Paper Path Test menu. Set the other items before selecting PRINT TEST PAGE.
		<b>SOURCE</b> : Select the tray that uses the paper path that you want to test. You can select any tray that is installed. Select <b>ALL TRAYS</b> to test all paper paths. (Paper must be loaded in the selected trays.)
		<b>DUPLEX</b> : Determine whether the paper goes through the duplexer during the paper-path test. The menu item appears only if the printer includes a built-in duplexer .
		<b>COPIES</b> : Set how many sheets of paper are used from each tray during the paper-path test.

## Service menu

40

The **SERVICE** menu is locked and requires a PIN for access. This menu is intended for use by authorized service personnel.

Chapter 2 Control panel ENWW

## **Changing printer-control-panel configuration settings**

By using the printer control panel, you can make changes to general printer configuration default settings such as tray size and type, sleep delay, printer personality (language), and jam recovery.

The printer-control-panel settings can also be changed from a computer by using the setting page of the embedded Web server. The computer shows the same information that the control panel shows. For more information, see Using the embedded Web server.



**CAUTION** Configuration settings seldom need to be changed. Hewlett-Packard Company recommends that only the system administrator change configuration settings.

### **Changing control-panel settings**

For a complete list of menu items and possible values, see <u>Using the control-panel menus</u>. Certain menu options appear only if the associated tray or accessory is installed. For example, the **EIO** menu appears only if an EIO card is installed.

#### To change a control-panel setting

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Use ▲ or ▼ to scroll to the menu that you want, and then press ✓.
- 3. Some menus might have several submenus. Use ▲ or ▼ to scroll to the submenu item that you want, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Use ▲ or ▼ to scroll to the setting, and then press ✓.
- 5. Use ▲ or ▼ to change the setting. Some settings change rapidly if ▲ or ▼ is held down.
- 6. Press ✓ to save the setting. An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selection on the display, indicating that it is now the default.
- 7. Press Menu to exit the menu.



**NOTE** Printer-driver settings override control-panel settings. Software program settings override both printer-driver settings and control-panel settings. If you cannot gain access to a menu or item, it is either not an option for the printer or you have not turned on the associated higher-level option. See your network administrator if a function has been locked (**Access denied menus locked** appears on the printer control-panel display).

#### Show address

This item determines whether the printer IP address appears on the display with the **Ready** message.

#### To show the IP address

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press **▼** to highlight **SHOW ADDRESS**, and then press **✓**.

- **5.** Press  $\triangle$  or  $\nabla$  to select the desired option, and then press  $\checkmark$ .
- Press Menu to exit the menu.

### **Tray-behavior options**

Four user-defined options are available for tray behavior:

- USE REQUESTED TRAY. Selecting EXCLUSIVELY ensures that the printer does not
  automatically select another tray when you indicate that a specific tray should be used.
  Selecting FIRST allows the printer to pull from a second tray if the specified tray is empty.
  EXCLUSIVELY is the default setting.
- MANUALLY FEED PROMPT. If you select ALWAYS (the default value), the system always shows a prompt before pulling from the multipurpose tray. If you select UNLESS LOADED, the system displays the prompt only if the multipurpose tray is empty.
- PS DEFER MEDIA. This setting affects how non-HP PostScript drivers behave with the printer.
  You do not need to change this setting if you use the drivers that HP supplies. If set to
  ENABLED, non-HP PostScript drivers use the same HP tray selection method as the
  HP drivers. If set to DISABLED, some non-HP PostScript drivers use the PostScript tray
  selection method instead of the HP method.
- SIZE/TYPE PROMPT. Use this item to control whether the tray configuration message and its
  corresponding prompts are shown whenever a tray is opened and closed. These prompts
  instruct you to change the type or size if the tray is configured for a different type or size than is
  loaded in the tray.

#### To set Use Requested Tray

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**, and then press ✓.
- Press 

  ✓ to select USE REQUESTED TRAY.
- 6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **EXCLUSIVELY** or **FIRST**, and then press ✓.
- 7. Press Menu to exit the menu.

#### To set Manually Feed Prompt

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight TRAY BEHAVIOR, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight MANUALLY FEED PROMPT, and then press ✓.
- 6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select ALWAYS or UNLESS LOADED, and then press ✓.
- **7.** Press Menu to exit the menu.

#### To set the printer default for PS Defer Media

- Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press **▼** to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**, and then press **✓**.
- Press ✓ to select PS DEFER MEDIA.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select ENABLED or DISABLED, and then press ✓.
- 7. Press Menu to exit the menu.

#### To set size/type prompt

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press ✓ to select SIZE/TYPE PROMPT.
- 6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **DISPLAY** or **DO NOT DISPLAY**, and then press ✓.
- 7. Press Menu to exit the menu.

### Sleep Delay

The adjustable Sleep Delay feature reduces power consumption when the printer has been inactive for an extended period. Use this menu item to set the length of time before the printer goes into Sleep mode. The default setting is **1 MINUTES**.



**NOTE** The printer control-panel display dims when the printer is in Sleep mode. Sleep mode does not affect printer warm-up time unless the printer was in Sleep mode for more than 8 hours.

#### To set the Sleep Delay

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- 4. Press ▼ to highlight SLEEP DELAY, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate time period, and then press ✓.
- 6. Press Menu to exit the menu.

#### To turn the Sleep mode on or off

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight **RESETS**, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **SLEEP MODE**, and then press ✓.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select ON or OFF, and then press ✓.
- 6. Press Menu to exit the menu.

### **Personality**

This printer features automatic personality (printer-language) switching.

- AUTO: Configures the printer to automatically detect the type of print job and configure its personality to accommodate that job.
- PCL: Configures the printer to use Printer Control Language.
- PDF: Configures the printer to use portable document format.
- PS: Configures the printer to use PostScript emulation.

#### To set the personality

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press **▼** to highlight **PERSONALITY**, and then press **∨**.
- 5. Press  $\triangle$  or  $\nabla$  to select the appropriate personality, and then press  $\checkmark$ .
- 6. Press Menu to exit the menu.

### Clearable warnings

Use this feature to determine the display time of control-panel clearable warnings by selecting **ON** or **JOB**. The default value is **JOB**.

- ON: Clearable warnings appear until you press ✓.
- **JOB**: Clearable warnings appear until the end of the job for which they were generated.

#### To set the clearable warnings

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- 4. Press ▼ to highlight CLEARABLE WARNINGS, and then press ✓.

- Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate setting, and then press ✓.
- Press Menu to exit the menu.

#### **Auto continue**

You can determine printer behavior when the system generates an auto-continuable error. **ON** is the default setting.

- Select ON if you want an error message to appear for 10 seconds before the printer automatically continues to print.
- Select OFF to pause printing any time an error message appears and until you press ✓.

#### To set auto continue

- Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **AUTO CONTINUE**, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate setting, and then press ✓.
- 6. Press Menu to exit the menu.

### **Cartridge low**

The printer has two options for reporting that print-cartridge life is low: **CONTINUE** is the default value.

- Select CONTINUE to allow the printer to continue printing while a warning appears and until the print cartridge is replaced.
- Select **STOP** if you want the printer to pause printing until you replace the used print cartridge or press  $\checkmark$ , which allows the printer to print while the warning appears.

#### To set supplies-low reporting

- 1. Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press **▼** to highlight **CARTRIDGE LOW**, and then press **✓**.
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate setting, and then press ✓.
- Press Menu to exit the menu.

### Cartridge-out response

The printer has two options for this menu item.

- Select CONTINUE to allow the printer to continue printing. A REPLACE CARTRIDGE warning
  message appears until the print cartridge is replaced. Printing in this mode can continue only for
  a specific number of pages. After that, the printer stops printing until you replace the empty print
  cartridge. This is the default setting.
- Select STOP if you want the printer to stop printing until the empty print cartridge is replaced.

#### To set the cartridge-out response

- Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **CARTRIDGE OUT**, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press  $\triangle$  or  $\nabla$  to select the appropriate setting, and then press  $\checkmark$ .
- 6. Press Menu to exit the menu.

### Jam recovery

Use this option to configure the printer response to jams, including how the printer handles the pages involved. **AUTO** is the default value.

- AUTO: The printer automatically turns jam recovery on when sufficient memory is available.
- ON: The printer reprints any page that is involved in a jam. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages that were printed, and this might cause overall printer performance to suffer.
- **OFF**: The printer does not reprint any page that was involved in a jam. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, overall printer performance might be optimized.

#### To set the jam-recovery response

- Press Menu to open the menus.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight JAM RECOVERY, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate setting, and then press ✓.
- 6. Press Menu to exit the menu.

#### **RAM** disk

This option determines how the RAM disk feature is configured. This option is available only if the printer has at least 8 MB of free memory. The default is **AUTO**.

- AUTO: The printer determines the optimal RAM disk size based on the amount of available memory.
- OFF: The RAM disk is disabled, but a minimal RAM disk is still active (sufficient to scan one page).

#### To set the RAM disk

- Press Menu to open the menus.
- Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press **▼** to highlight **RAM DISK**, and then press **∨**.
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate setting, and then press ✓.
- Press Menu to exit the menu.

#### Language

If **LANGUAGE** appears in English on the control panel, use the following procedure. Otherwise, turn the printer off and then on again. When **XXX MB** appears, press and hold  $\checkmark$ . When all three control panel lights are lit, release  $\checkmark$  and use the following procedure to set the language.

#### Selecting the language during initial installation

- 1. Turn on the printer.
- 2. When **LANGUAGE** appears on the control-panel display in the default language, press ▼ to highlight the preferred language, and then press ✓.

#### Changing the language after the initial configuration

After the initial installation, you can change the control-panel display language from the control panel.

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Use ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Use ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- Use ▼ to highlight LANGUAGE, and then press ✓.
- 5. Use  $\nabla$  or  $\triangle$  to highlight the appropriate language, and then press  $\checkmark$ .
- 6. Press Menu to exit the menu.

# 3 Input/output (I/O) configuration

This chapter describes how to configure certain network parameters on the printer:

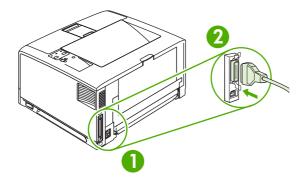
- Parallel configuration
- USB configuration
- Network configuration

ENWW 49

## **Parallel configuration**

The printer supports network and parallel connections at the same time. A parallel connection is made by connecting the printer to the computer using a bidirectional parallel cable (IEEE-1284 compliant) with a connector plugged into the printer parallel port. The cable can be a maximum of 10 meters (30 feet) long.

When used to describe a parallel interface, the term bidirectional indicates that the printer is able to both receive data from the computer and send data to the computer through the parallel port. While the parallel interface provides backwards compatibility, a USB or network connection is recommended to optimize performance.



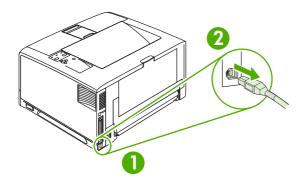
1	Parallel port	
2	Parallal connector	

## **USB** configuration

The printer supports a Hi-Speed USB 2.0 port. The USB cable can be a maximum of 5 meters (15 feet) long.

## Connecting the USB cable

Plug the USB cable into the printer. Plug the other end of the USB cable into the computer.



1	USB port
2	USB connector

ENWW USB configuration 51

## **Network configuration**

You might need to configure certain network parameters on the printer. You can configure these parameters from the printer control panel, the embedded Web server, or for most networks, from the HP Web Jetadmin software.



**NOTE** For more information about using the embedded Web server, see <u>Using the</u> embedded Web server.

For a complete list of supported networks and for instructions on configuring network parameters from software, see the *HP Jetdirect Embedded Print Server Administrator's Guide*. The guide comes with printers in which an HP Jetdirect embedded print server is installed.

### Manually configuring TCP/IP parameters from the control panel

Use manual configuration to set an IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

#### Setting an IP address

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight I/O, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **EMBEDDED JETDIRECT**, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press ▼ to highlight TCP/IP, and then press ✓.
- **6.** Press ▼ to highlight **MANUAL SETTINGS**, and then press ✓.
- 7. Press ▼ to highlight IP Address:, and then press ✓.
- 8. Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow to increase or decrease the number for the first byte of the IP address.
- **9.** Press ✓ to move to the next set of numbers. (Press <sup>5</sup> to move to the previous set of numbers.)



**NOTE** To cycle through the numbers more quickly, hold down the arrow button.

- **10.** Repeat steps 8 and 9 until the correct IP address is complete, and then press ✓ to save the setting.
- 11. Press Menu to return to the **Ready** state.

#### Setting the subnet mask

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight I/O, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **EMBEDDED JETDIRECT**, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight TCP/IP, and then press ✓.

- 6. Press ▼ to highlight MANUAL SETTINGS, and then press ✓.
- 7. Press ▼ to highlight **SUBNET MASK**, and then press ✓.
- Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow to increase or decrease the number for the first byte of the subnet mask.
- 10. Repeat steps 8 and 9 until the correct subnet mask is complete, and then press ✓ to save the subnet mask.
- 11. Press Menu to return to the **Ready** state.

#### Setting the default gateway

- Press Menu.
- Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight I/O, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight EMBEDDED JETDIRECT, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press ▼ to highlight TCP/IP, and then press ✓.
- 6. Press ▼ to highlight MANUAL SETTINGS, and then press ✓.
- 7. Press ▼ to highlight **DEFAULT GATEWAY**, and then press ✓.
- Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow to increase or decrease the number for the first byte of the default gateway.
- **10.** Repeat steps 8 and 9 until the correct default gateway is complete, and then press ✓ to save the default gateway.
- **11.** Press Menu to return to the **Ready** state.

## Disabling network protocols (optional)

By factory default, all supported network protocols are enabled. Disabling unused protocols has the following benefits:

- Decreases printer-generated network traffic
- Prevents unauthorized users from printing to the printer
- Provides only pertinent information on the configuration page
- Allows the printer control panel to display protocol-specific error and warning messages

ENWW Network configuration 53

#### To disable IPX/SPX



**NOTE** Do not disable this protocol in Windows-based systems that print to the printer through IPX/SPX.

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight I/O, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **EMBEDDED JETDIRECT**, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press ▼ to highlight IPX/SPX, and then press ✓.
- 6. Press ✓ to select **ENABLE**.
- 7. Press ▼ to highlight **OFF**, and then press ✓.
- 8. Press Menu to return to the **Ready** state.

#### To disable AppleTalk

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight I/O, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **EMBEDDED JETDIRECT**, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press ▼ to highlight APPLETALK, and then press ✓.
- 6. Press ✓ to select **ENABLE**.
- 7. Press ▼ to highlight **OFF**, and then press ✓.
- 8. Press Menu to return to the **Ready** state.

#### To disable DLC/LLC

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight I/O, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight **EMBEDDED JETDIRECT**, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight DLC/LLC, and then press ✓.
- Press ✓ to select ENABLE.
- 7. Press ▼ to highlight **OFF**, and then press ✓.
- **8.** Press Menu to return to the **Ready** state.

### Enhanced I/O (EIO) configuration



**NOTE** If you are adding a print server to the base model, additional printer memory might be required.

The enhanced input/output (EIO) slot holds compatible accessory devices, such as the HP Jetdirect print server network cards or other devices. Plugging an EIO network card into the slot increases the number of network interfaces available to the printer.

#### **HP Jetdirect EIO print servers**

HP Jetdirect print servers (network cards) can be installed in EIO slots. These cards support multiple network protocols and operating systems. HP Jetdirect print servers facilitate network management by allowing you to connect a printer directly to your network at any location. HP Jetdirect print servers also support the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), which provides network managers with remote printer management and troubleshooting through the HP Web Jetadmin software.



**NOTE** Configure the card either through the control panel, the printer installation software, or with HP Web Jetadmin software. Refer to the HP Jetdirect print server documentation for more information.

ENWW Network configuration 55

# 4 Printing tasks

This chapter describes how to perform basic printing tasks:

- Controlling print jobs
- Using print media
- Configuring output bins
- Configuring trays
- Printing on special media
- Printing and paper storage environment
- Printing on both sides (duplexing)
- Using features in the Windows printer driver
- Using features in the Macintosh printer driver
- Managing special printing situations
- Managing stored jobs
- Managing memory

ENWW 57

## **Controlling print jobs**

In Windows, three settings affect how the printer driver pulls media when you send a print job. The **Source**, **Type**, and **Size** settings appear in the **Page Setup**, **Print**, or **Print Properties** dialog boxes in most software programs. If you do not change these settings, the printer automatically uses the default printer settings to select a tray.



**CAUTION** Make printer setup changes through the software program or the printer driver whenever possible, because changes that you make at the control panel become default settings for subsequent print jobs. Settings selected in the software or the printer driver override control-panel settings.

#### Source

Print by **Source** to specify a tray from which the printer will pull media. The printer tries to print from this tray, no matter what type or size is loaded in it. If you select a tray that is configured for a type or size that does not match your print job, the job does not proceed until you load the tray with the correct type or size. If you load the tray correctly, the printer begins printing. If you press  $\checkmark$ , you can select another tray.



**NOTE** If you have difficulties printing by **Source**, see <u>Priority for print settings</u>.

### Type and Size

Print by **Type** or **Size** when you want to pull media from the first tray that is loaded with the type or size that you select. Selecting media by type rather than source is similar to locking out trays and helps protect special media from accidental use. For example, if a tray is configured for letterhead, and you specify that the driver print on plain paper, the printer will not pull media from that tray, but will pull paper from a tray that has plain paper loaded and is configured for plain paper.



58

**NOTE** Selecting the **Any** setting negates the tray lock-out function.

Selecting media by type and size results in significantly better print quality for heavy paper, glossy paper, and overhead transparencies. Using the wrong setting can result in unsatisfactory print quality. Always print by **Type** for special print media, such as labels or transparencies. Always print by **Size** for envelopes.

- If you want to print by Type or Size and the trays have not been configured for a certain type or size, load the media into tray 1. Then, in the printer driver, select the Type or Size in the Page Setup, Print, or Print Properties dialog box.
- If you often print on a certain type or size of media, the printer administrator (for a network printer) or you (for a local printer) can configure a tray for that type or size. Then, when you select that type or size as you print a job, the printer pulls from the tray configured for that type or size.
- When you close tray 2 or optional tray 3, a message might appear prompting you to select a
   Type or Size for the tray. If the tray is already configured correctly, press <sup>♠</sup> to return to the
   Ready state.

Chapter 4 Printing tasks ENWW



**NOTE** If all of the tray type settings are set to **ANY**, and if you do not select a specific tray (source) in the printer driver, the printer pulls media from the lowest tray. For example, if you have an optional tray 3 installed, the printer pulls media from that tray first. However, if the tray 1 size and type settings are set to **ANY** and if media is loaded in the tray, then the printer prints from tray 1 first. If tray 1 is closed, the printer prints from the lowest tray.

### **Priority for print settings**

Changes to print settings are prioritized depending on where the changes are made:



**NOTE** The names of commands and dialog boxes might vary depending on your software program.

- Page Setup dialog box: Click Page Setup or a similar command on the File menu of the
  program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed here override settings
  changed anywhere else.
- Print dialog box: Click Print, Print Setup, or a similar command on the File menu of the
  program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed in the Print dialog box
  have a lower priority and do not override changes made in the Page Setup dialog box.
- Printer Properties dialog box (printer driver): Click Properties in the Print dialog box to
  open the printer driver. Settings changed in the Printer Properties dialog box do not override
  settings anywhere else in the printing software.
- Default printer driver settings: The default printer driver settings determine the settings used
  in all print jobs, unless settings are changed in the Page Setup, Print, or Printer Properties
  dialog boxes.
- **Printer control panel settings**: Settings changed at the printer control panel have a lower priority than changes made anywhere else.

### Gaining access to printer driver settings

Operating System	Temporarily change settings for print jobs	Permanently change default settings <sup>1</sup>
Windows 98, 2000, Me, and XP	From the <b>File</b> menu, click <b>Print</b> . Select the printer, and then click <b>Properties</b> . (The steps can vary; this procedure is most common.)	Click <b>Start</b> , point to <b>Settings</b> , and then click <b>Printers</b> or <b>Printers</b> and <b>Faxes</b> . Right-click the printer icon and select <b>Printing Preferences</b> .
Macintosh OS X	On the <b>File</b> menu, click <b>Print</b> . Change settings on the various pop-up menus.	On the <b>File</b> menu, click <b>Print</b> . Change settings on the various pop-up menus, and then, on the main pop-up menu, click <b>Save Custom Settings</b> to save them as the <b>Custom</b> option. To use the new settings, you must select the <b>Custom</b> option every time you open a program and print.

Because access to default printer settings can be restricted, the settings might be unavailable.

ENWW Controlling print jobs 59

## **Using print media**

Before purchasing any paper or specialized forms in quantity, verify that your paper supplier has obtained and understands the print-media requirements that are specified in the *HP LaserJet Printer Family Print Media Specification Guide*.

See <u>HP Customer Care</u> to order the *HP LaserJet Printer Family Print Media Specification Guide*. To download a copy of the guide, go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/support/lj5200">www.hp.com/support/lj5200</a>. Select **Manuals**.

It is possible that paper could meet all of the guidelines in this chapter or the *HP LaserJet Printer Family Print Media Specification Guide* and still not print satisfactorily. This can result from abnormal characteristics of the printing environment or other variables over which HP has no control (for example, extremes in temperature and humidity).

Hewlett-Packard Company recommends testing any paper before buying it in large quantities.



**CAUTION** Using paper that does not conform to the specifications listed here or in the print media guide can cause problems that require service. This service is not covered by the Hewlett-Packard warranty or service agreements.

### Paper to avoid

The printer can handle many types of paper. Using paper that does not meet specifications will cause lower print quality and increase the chance of jams.

- Do not use paper that is too rough.
- Do not use paper, other than standard 3-hole punched paper, that contains cutouts or perforations.
- Do not use multipart forms.
- Do not use paper that has already been printed on, or that has been fed through a photocopier.
- Do not use paper that contains a watermark if you are printing solid patterns.

### Paper that can damage the printer

In rare circumstances, paper can damage the printer. The following paper must be avoided to prevent possible damage to the printer:

- Do not use paper with staples attached, or paper from which staples were removed. Staples can damage the printer and could void the warranty.
- Do not use transparencies that are designed for Inkjet printers or other low temperature printers, or for monochrome printing. Use only transparencies that are specified for use with HP LaserJet printers.
- Do not use photo paper that is intended for Inkjet printers.
- Do not use paper that is embossed or coated, or any media that produces hazardous emissions, or that melts, misaligns, or discolors when exposed to 190°C (374°F) for 0.1 second. Also, do not use letterhead paper that is made with dyes or inks that cannot withstand that temperature.

To order HP LaserJet printing supplies, see Ordering parts, accessories, and supplies.

## **Configuring output bins**

The printer has two output bins into which it places finished print jobs:

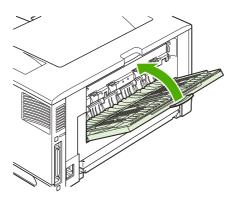
- Top (face-down) output bin: This it the default output bin at the top of the printer. Print jobs exit the printer face-down into this bin.
- Rear (face-up) output bin: Print jobs exit the printer face-up into this bin at the rear of the printer.



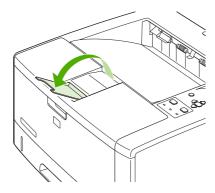
**NOTE** You cannot use automatic duplex printing when printing to the rear output bin.

## Printing to the top output bin

1. Make sure that the rear output bin is closed. If the rear output bin is open, the printer will deliver the print job to that bin.



2. If you are printing on long media, open the top output bin support.



**3.** From your computer, send the print job to the printer.

ENWW Configuring output bins

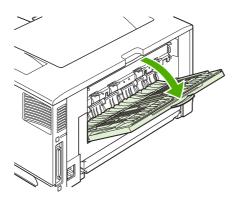
61

### Printing to the rear output bin

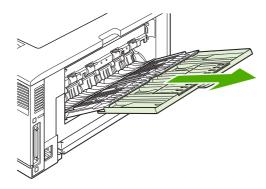


**NOTE** When tray 1 and the rear output bin are used together, they provide a straight-through paper path for your print job. Using a straight-through paper path can reduce curling.

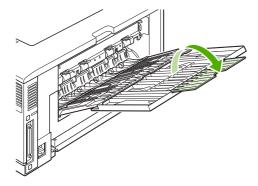
1. Open the rear output bin.



2. If you are printing on long media, pull out the bin extension.



3. Open the extension tray support.



4. From your computer, send the print job to the printer.

## **Configuring trays**

Load special print media, such as envelopes, labels, and transparencies, in tray 1 only. Load only paper in tray 2 or optional tray 3.

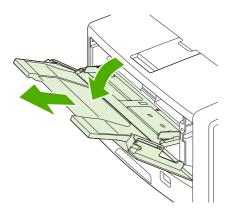
### Loading tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

Tray 1 holds up to 100 sheets of paper, up to 75 transparencies, up to 50 sheets of labels, or up to 10 envelopes. See the following sections for information about printing on special media:

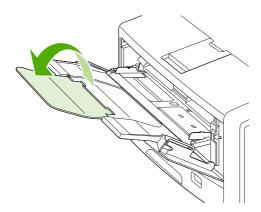
- Preprinted material—<u>Printing on letterhead, prepunched, or preprinted paper (single-sided)</u>
- Envelopes—<u>Printing on envelopes</u>
- Labels—<u>Printing on labels</u>

### To load tray 1

1. Open tray 1 by pulling the front cover down.

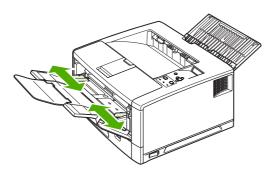


2. Slide out the plastic tray extender. If the media that is being loaded is longer than 229 mm (9 in), also flip open the additional tray extender.

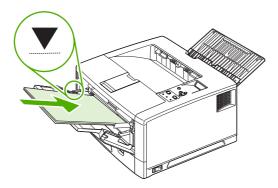


ENWW Configuring trays 63

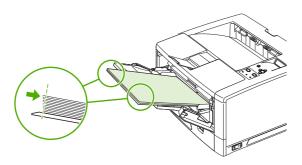
3. Slide the media-width guides slightly wider than the media.



4. Place media into the tray (short-edge in, print-side up). The media should be centered between the media-width guides and under the tabs on the media-width guides.



5. Slide the media-width guides inward until they lightly touch the media stack on both sides without bending it. Make sure that the media fits under the tabs on the media-width guides.





64

**NOTE** Do not add media to tray 1 while the printer is printing. This could cause a jam. Do not close the front door when the printer is printing.

### **Customizing tray 1 operation**

The printer can be set to print from tray 1 if it is loaded, or to print only from tray 1 if the type of media that is loaded is specifically requested. See <a href="Paper Handling menu">Paper Handling menu</a>.

Setting	Explanation	
TRAY 1 TYPE=ANY	The printer usually pulls media from tray 1 first unless it is empty or closed. If you do not keep media in tray 1 all the time, or if you use tray 1 only to manually feed media, keep the default setting of <b>TRAY 1 TYPE=ANY</b> and <b>TRAY 1 SIZE=ANY</b> on the Paper Handling menu.	
TRAY 1 SIZE=ANY		
TRAY 1 TYPE= or TRAY 1 SIZE= a type other than ANY	The printer treats tray 1 like the other trays. Instead of looking for media in tray 1 first, the printer pulls media from the tray that matches type and size settings that are selected in the software.	
	In the printer driver, you can select media from any tray (including tray 1) by type, size, or source. To print by type and size of paper, see <u>Controlling print jobs</u> .	

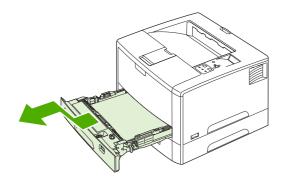
You can also determine whether the printer shows a prompt to ask if it can pull media from tray 1 if it cannot find the type and size that you requested in another tray. You can set the printer to always prompt you before pulling from tray 1 or only prompt you if tray 1 is empty. Set the **USE REQUESTED TRAY** setting on the **System Setup** submenu of the **Configure Device** menu.

### Loading tray 2 (250-sheet tray)

Tray 2 supports only paper. For supported paper sizes, see <a href="Paper specifications">Paper specifications</a>.

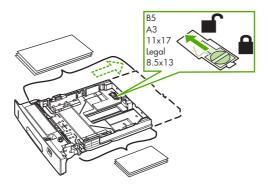
### To load tray 2

1. Pull the tray out of the printer and remove any paper.

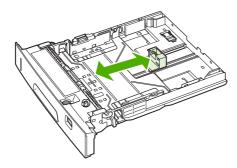


ENWW Configuring trays 65

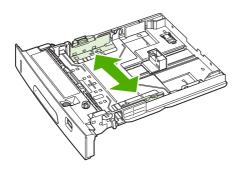
• If you are printing on longer media, slide the lock lever on the tray into the unlocked position, and then extend the rear section of the tray to fit the media that you are loading.



2. On the rear paper-length guide, press the tab and slide it so that the pointer matches the paper size that you are loading. Make sure that the guide clicks into place.

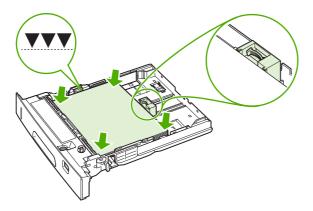


**3.** Adjust the side media-width guides outward so that the pointer matches the paper size that you are loading.

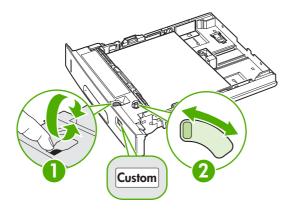


66

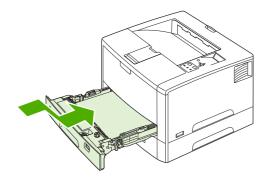
**4.** Place the paper in the tray and make sure that it is flat at all four corners. Keep the paper below the height tabs on the paper-length guide in the rear of the tray.



5. Set the paper-size switch (callout 1) and paper-size dial (callout 2) to the size of the paper that you loaded.



6. Slide the tray into the printer.



## Loading optional tray 3 (500-sheet tray)

Tray 3 supports only paper. For supported paper sizes, see <a href="Paper specifications">Paper specifications</a>.

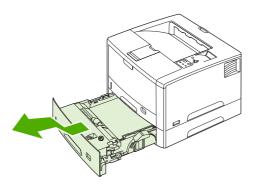


**NOTE** The tray 3 500-sheet tray is standard with the HP LaserJet 5200tn and HP LaserJet 5200dtn printer models.

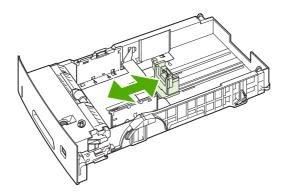
ENWW Configuring trays 67

### To load tray 3

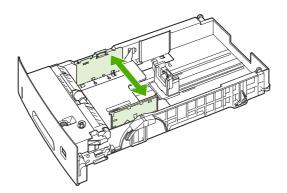
1. Pull the tray out of the printer and remove any paper.



2. Adjust the rear length guide for the correct paper size.

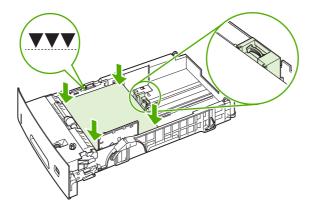


3. Adjust the side width guide for the correct paper size.

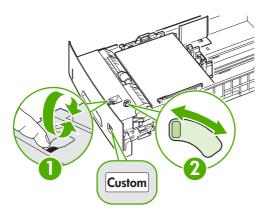


68

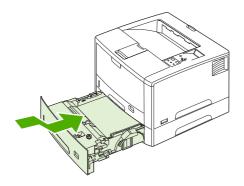
**4.** Place the paper in the tray and make sure that it is flat at all four corners. Keep the paper below the hooks on the side and rear of the tray.



5. Set the paper-size dial (callout 1) and paper-size switch (callout 2) to the size of the paper that you loaded.



6. Slide the tray into the printer.



ENWW Configuring trays 69

## Printing on special media

Special media includes letterhead, prepunched (including 3-hole punched), envelopes, labels, transparencies, full-bleed images, rotated paper, index cards, postcards, custom-size, and heavy paper.

# Printing on letterhead, prepunched, or preprinted paper (single-sided)

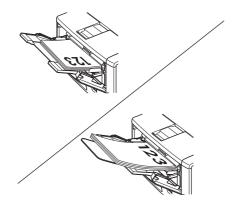
When printing letterhead, prepunched, or preprinted paper, it is important to orient the paper correctly. Follow the guidelines in this section for printing on one side only. For duplexing guidelines, see <a href="Printing on both sides">Printing on both sides (duplexing)</a>.



**NOTE** It might be necessary to print prepunched paper in a rotated orientation (see <a href="Printing on rotated media">Printing on rotated media</a>). Printing in portrait or landscape mode is usually selected from the software program or printer driver. If the option is not available, change the **ORIENTATION** setting on the printer control panel.

#### Tray 1 orientation

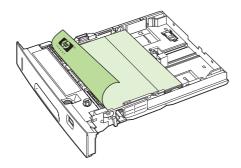
- Letter, A4, A5, Executive, 8K, 16K, and custom sizes: Load media with the side to be printed on facing up, and the top, short edge toward the right (landscape).
- A3, B4, B5, 11 x 17, Legal, 8.5 x 13, and custom sizes: Load media with the side to be printed on facing up, and the top, short edge toward the printer (portrait).



#### Tray 2 or tray 3 orientation

70

Load media with the side to be printed on facing down, and the top, short edge toward you.



#### Guidelines for printing on letterhead or preprinted forms

- Do not use letterhead paper that is printed with low-temperature inks, such as those used in some types of thermography.
- Do not use raised or embossed letterhead.
- The printer uses heat and pressure to fuse toner to the paper. Make sure that any colored paper
  or preprinted forms use inks that are compatible with this fusing temperature (200°C or 392°F
  for 0.1 second).

### **Printing on envelopes**

You can print envelopes from tray 1. Tray 1 holds up to 10 envelopes and supports standard or custom sizes.

For printing on any size of envelope, make sure to set the margins in your program at least 15.0 mm (0.6 in) from the edge of the envelope.

To minimize curl and wrinkling, always print envelopes to the rear output bin.

The printer might print at a slower speed when printing envelopes. In addition, printing performance depends on the construction of the envelope. Always test a few sample envelopes before purchasing a large quantity. For envelope specifications, see <a href="Paper specifications">Paper specifications</a>.



**WARNING!** Never use envelopes that contain coated linings, exposed self-stick adhesives, or other synthetic materials. These items can emit noxious fumes.



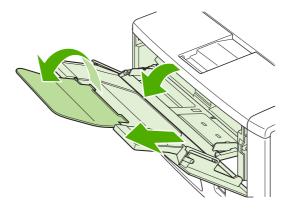
**CAUTION** Envelopes that have clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, exposed self-stick adhesives, or other synthetic materials can severely damage the printer. To avoid jams and possible printer damage, never try to print on both sides of an envelope. Before you load envelopes, make sure that they are flat and not damaged or stuck together. Do not use envelopes that contain pressure-sensitive adhesive.

71

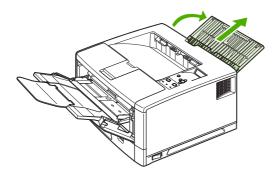
### To load envelopes in tray 1

Many types of envelopes can be printed from tray 1. Up to 10 can be stacked in the tray.

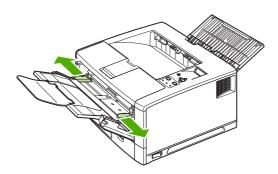
1. Open tray 1 and pull out the tray extension. If the envelopes are longer than 229 mm (9 in), flip open the smaller tray extension.



2. Open the rear output bin and pull out the tray extension. (This can reduce envelope curl and wrinkling.)

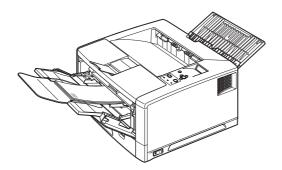


3. Slide the width guides on tray 1 outward to a position that is slightly wider than the envelopes.

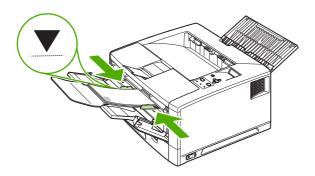


72

4. Load as many as 10 envelopes in the center of tray 1 with the side to be printed on facing up, and the postage end pointed away from the printer. Slide the envelopes into the printer as far as they will go without forcing them.



5. Adjust the guides to touch the envelope stack without bending the envelopes. Make sure that the envelopes fit under the tabs on the guides.



## Printing on labels

Use only labels that are recommended for laser printers. For label specifications, see <u>Labels</u>.

#### Guidelines for printing on labels

- Print labels from tray 1. Load them with the side to be printed on facing up and the top edge to the right.
- Use the rear output bin for labels.
- Remove label sheets from the output bin as they are printed to prevent them from sticking together.
- Do not use labels that are separating from the backing sheet or are wrinkled or damaged in any way.
- Do not use label sheets that have the backing sheet exposed, and do not reuse partially used label sheets.

- Do not feed a sheet of labels through the printer more than once. The adhesive backing is designed for one pass through the printer.
- Do not print on both sides of labels.



**CAUTION** Failure to follow these guidelines can damage the printer.

If a sheet of labels becomes jammed in the printer, see <u>Clearing jams</u>.

### Printing on transparencies

Use only transparencies that are recommended for use in laser printers. For transparency specifications, see Transparencies.

### Guidelines for printing on transparencies

- Print transparencies from tray 1. Load them with the side to be printed on facing up and the top edge to the right.
- Use the top output bin to reduce curling (this is for transparencies only; for other media use the rear output bin to reduce curling).
- Remove transparencies from the top output bin as they are printed to prevent them from sticking together.
- Place transparencies on a flat surface after removing them from the printer.
- In the print driver or software program, set the tray 1 type to Transparency.

### Printing on rotated media

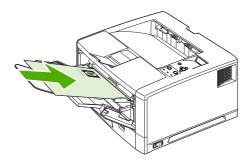
The printer can print on letter, A4, A5, Executive, and B5 (JIS) print media in a rotated orientation (short-edge first) from tray 1. The printer can print on letter and A4 media in a rotated orientation from tray 2 or optional tray 3. Printing on rotated media is slower. Some types of media feed better when rotated, such as prepunched paper (especially when it is printed on both sides from the optional duplexer) or labels that do not stack flat.

#### Printing from tray 1

74

- On the PAPER HANDLING menu on the printer control panel, select TRAY 1 MODE=CASSETTE.
- On the PAPER HANDLING menu, select the appropriate tray 1 size.

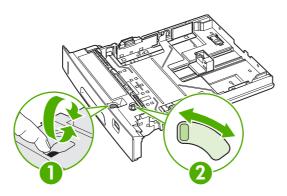
3. Load media with the side to be printed on facing up, and the top, short edge toward the printer.



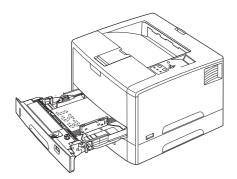
4. In the printer driver or software program, select the paper size as you normally would and select tray 1 as the media source.

#### Printing from tray 2 or optional tray 3

1. Set the paper-size dial (callout 1) and paper-size switch (callout 2) to the size of the paper that you are loading.



2. Load paper with the side-to-be printed on facing down, and the top, short-edge toward the front of the tray.



3. In the printer driver or software program, select the size and source of the rotated paper.

### Printing full-bleed images

Full-bleed images extend from edge to edge of the page. To achieve this effect, use larger paper, then trim its edges to the desired size.



**CAUTION** Never print directly to the edge of paper. This causes toner to accumulate inside the printer, which may affect print quality and damage the printer. Print on paper up to 312 x 470 mm (12.28 x 18.5 in), leaving margins on all four sides of at least 2 mm (0.08 in).



**NOTE** When printing paper wider than 297 mm (11.7 in), always use the rear output bin. Do not use the optional duplexer when printing this size of paper.

### Printing on custom-size media

Custom-size paper can be printed from any of the trays. For media specifications, see <a href="Paper">Paper</a> <a href="Specifications">Specifications</a>.



**NOTE** Very small or very large custom-size paper should be printed from tray 1 to the rear output bin. The printer control panel can be set for one custom size at a time. Do not load more than one size of custom paper into the printer.

When you print large numbers of small or narrow media and standard paper, for best printing performance print paper first, then the small or narrow media.

#### Guidelines for printing custom-size paper

- Do not attempt to print on paper smaller than 76 mm (3 in) wide or 127 mm (5 in) long.
- Set page margins at least 4.23 mm (0.17 in) away from the edges.

#### Setting custom paper sizes

When custom paper is loaded, size settings need to be selected from the software program (the preferred method), the printer driver, and the printer control panel.



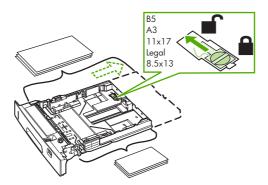
**NOTE** All settings in the printer driver and software program (except configuring custom paper sizes) override control panel settings. (Software program settings override printer driver settings.)

If the settings are not available from the software, set the custom paper size from the control panel:

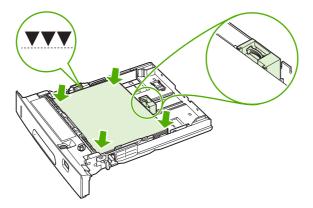
- On the PRINTING menu, set DEFAULT PAPER SIZE=CUSTOM.
- 2. On the **CUSTOM** menu, select inches or millimeters as the unit of measurement.
- 3. On the unit of measurement (**INCHES** or **MILLIMETERS**) menu, set the X dimension (the long edge of the paper). The X dimension can be 76 to 312 mm (3 to 12.28 in) for tray 1 or 148 to 297 mm (8.2 to 11.7 in) for tray 2 and optional tray 3. Set the Y dimension (the short edge of the paper). The Y dimension can be 127 to 470 mm (5 to 18.5 in) for tray 1 or 210 to 432 mm (5.8 to 17 in) for tray 2 and optional tray 3.
- 4. If custom media is loaded into tray 1 and TRAY 1 MODE=CASSETTE, then set TRAY 1 SIZE=CUSTOM in the PAPER HANDLING menu on the printer control panel.
- 5. In the software, select **Custom** as the paper size.

### Loading custom-size media in tray 2 or optional tray 3

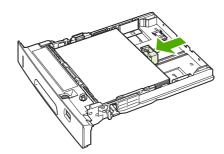
- 1. Pull the tray out of the printer and remove any media.
  - If you are printing on longer media from tray 2, slide the lock lever on the tray into the unlocked position, and then extend the rear section of the tray to fit the media that you are loading.



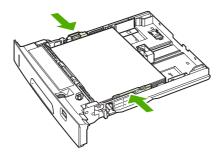
2. Place the media in the tray and make sure that it is flat at all four corners. Keep the stack below the height tabs on the paper-length guide in the rear of the tray.



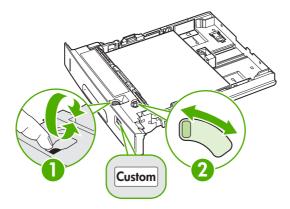
3. On the rear paper-length guide, press the tab and slide it up against the edge of the stack.



4. Slide the side media-width guides up against the edge of the stack.



**5.** Set the paper-size dial (callout 1) and paper-size switch (callout 2) to **Custom**.

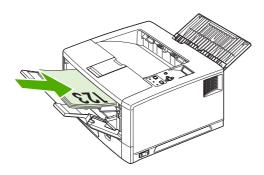


6. Slide the tray into the printer.

## **Printing on vellum**

Vellum is special lightweight paper similar to parchment. Print vellum from tray 1 only, and open the rear output bin. Do not print on both sides of vellum.

1. Load vellum with the side to be printed on facing up and the top, short edge to the right.



2. Open the rear output bin.

- 3. At the control panel, on the PAPER HANDLING menu, set TRAY 1 MODE=CASSETTE.
- **4.** From the printer driver, set the type of paper for tray 1 to vellum, and select the media by type. For more information, see Type and Size.

### **Printing on glossy paper**

- In either the software program or the driver, select **Glossy** as the media type, or print from a tray that is configured for glossy paper.
  - Select **Glossy** for media weights up to 120 g/m² (32-lb bond). Select **Heavy Glossy** for media weights up to 163 g/m² (43-lb bond). Select **Extra Heavy Glossy** for media weights up to 220 g/m² (58-lb bond).
- Because this affects all print jobs, it is important to return the printer to its original settings once the job has printed.

### **Colored paper**

- Colored paper should be of the same high quality as white xerographic paper.
- Pigments used must be able to withstand the printer's fusing temperature of 190°C (374°F) for 0.1 second without deterioration.
- Do not use paper that has a colored coating that was added after the paper was produced.

### **Heavy** paper

- Any tray will print most heavy media that does not exceed 120 g/m² (32-lb bond).
- Use cardstock (135 to 220 g/m² (36- to 58-lb bond)) only in tray 1.
- In either the software program or the printer driver, select **Heavy** (106 to 163 g/m² (28- to 43-lb bond)) or **Cardstock** (135 to 220 g/m² (36- to 58-lb bond)) as the media type, or print from a tray that is configured for heavy paper. Because this setting affects all print jobs, it is important to return the printer to its original settings after the job has printed.



**CAUTION** In general, do not use paper that is heavier than the media specification recommended for this printer. Doing so can cause misfeeds, jams, reduced print quality, and excessive mechanical wear. However, some heavier media, such as HP Cover Stock, can be used safely.

### **HP LaserJet Tough paper**

- Use only HP LaserJet Tough paper with this printer. HP products are designed to work together for optimum printing results.
- Handle HP LaserJet Tough paper by the edges. Oils from your fingers can cause print-quality problems.
- In either the software program or the printer driver, select **Tough Paper** as the media type, or print from a tray that is configured for HP LaserJet Tough paper.



**CAUTION** Transparent media that is not designed for LaserJet printing will melt in the printer, causing damage to the printer.

## Recycled paper

80

This printer supports the use of recycled paper. Recycled paper must meet the same specifications as standard paper. See the *HP LaserJet Printer Family Print Media Specification Guide*. Hewlett-Packard recommends that recycled paper contain no more than 5% ground wood.

## Printing and paper storage environment

Ideally, the printing and paper storage environment should be at or near room temperature, and not too dry or too humid. Remember paper is hygroscopic; it absorbs and loses moisture rapidly.

Heat works with humidity to damage paper. Heat causes the moisture in paper to evaporate, while cold causes it to condense on the sheets. Heating systems and air conditioners remove most of the humidity from a room. As paper is opened and used, it loses moisture, causing streaks and smudging. Humid weather or water coolers can cause the humidity to increase in a room. As paper is opened and used it absorbs any excess moisture, causing light print and dropouts. Also, as paper loses and gains moisture it can distort. This can cause jams.

As a result, paper storage and handling are as important as the paper-making process itself. Paper storage environmental conditions directly affect the feed operation.

Care should be taken not to purchase more paper than can be easily used in a short time (about 3 months). Paper stored for long periods might experience heat and moisture extremes, which can cause damage. Planning is important to prevent damage to a large supply of paper.

Unopened paper in sealed reams can remain stable for several months before use. Opened packages of paper have more potential for environmental damage, especially if they are not wrapped with a moisture-proof barrier.

The paper storage environment should be properly maintained to ensure optimum printer performance. The required condition is 20° to 24°C (68° to 75°F), with a relative humidity of 45% to 55%. The following guidelines should be helpful when evaluating the paper's storage environment:

- Paper should be stored at or near room temperature.
- The air should not be too dry or too humid (due to the hygroscopic properties of paper).
- The best way to store an opened ream of paper is to rewrap it tightly in its moisture-proof wrapping. If the printer environment is subject to extremes, unwrap only the amount of paper to be used during the day's operation to prevent unwanted moisture changes.

## Printing on both sides (duplexing)

You can print on both sides of a sheet of paper (called duplexing or two-sided printing) in two ways—automatic and manual. The following paper sizes are supported for automatic duplexing: letter, A4, legal, and 8.5 x 13 in. Manual duplexing supports all paper sizes.

- **Automatic duplexing:** The built-in, automatic duplexer is included only with the HP LaserJet 5200dtn printer. It is available as an accessory for the other models.
- Manual duplexing: All printer models are capable of manual duplex printing. The printer prints
  the first side of each page, waits for you to reinsert the paper into the printer, and then prints the
  second side of each page. Other documents cannot be printed while the printer waits for you to
  insert the paper for the second side to be printed.

Even if the printer includes a built-in duplexer, manual duplexing is necessary for the following situations:

- When duplexing paper other than the supported sizes or weights—for example, paper heavier than 105 g/m² (28 lb) or very thin paper.
- When you select Straight Paper Path in the printer driver

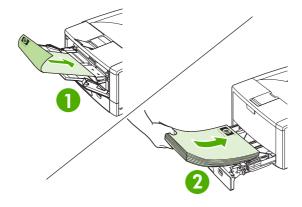


**CAUTION** Do not print on both sides of labels, transparencies, or vellum. Damage to the printer and jams might result.

### Paper orientation for printing on both sides

For manual duplexing, print on the second side of the sheet of paper first. The paper needs to be oriented as shown in the following illustration.

- For tray 1, load the first side facing down with the bottom, short edge toward the printer.
- For all other trays, load the first side facing up with the top, short edge toward the printer.



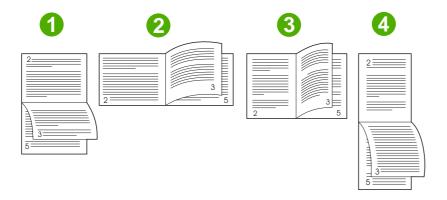
1 Tray 1

82

2 All other trays

### Layout options for printing on both sides

The following illustration shows the four print-orientation options. These options are available when **Print on Both Sides** is selected on the **Finishing** tab in the printer driver.



1. Long-edge landscape <sup>1</sup>	This layout is often used in accounting, data processing, and spreadsheet programs. Every other printed image is oriented upside-down. Facing pages are read continuously from top to bottom.
2. Short-edge landscape	Each printed image is oriented right-side-up. Facing pages are read from top to bottom on the left page, then from top to bottom on the right page.
3. Long-edge portrait	This is the default printer setting, and the most common layout used, with every printed image oriented right-side-up. Facing pages are read from top to bottom on the left page, then from top to bottom on the right page.
4. Short-edge portrait*	This layout is often used with clipboards. Every other printed image is oriented upside-down. Facing pages are read continuously from top to bottom.

When using Windows drivers, select **Flip Pages Up** to get the designated binding options.

## To print on both sides by using the built-in duplexer

The built-in duplexer is included only with the HP LaserJet 5200dtn printer. It is available as an accessory for the other models.

For best duplexing results, HP recommends 90 to 105 g/m2 (24 to 28 lb) media.

- 1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
  - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side down, bottom-edge first.
  - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with the front side facing up, and the top edge toward the back of the tray.



**CAUTION** Do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28 lb bond). Jamming could result.

- 2. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 3. On the Finishing tab, select Print on Both Sides.

- 4. Click OK.
- 5. Send the print job to the printer.



**NOTE** The paper you are printing on will partially come out of the top output bin during the duplexing. Do not pull on the paper until duplexing is complete. During duplexing, the duplexer will not function if the rear output bin is open.

### To print on both sides manually

- 1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
  - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side down, bottom-edge first.
  - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with first side up, top edge toward the back of the tray.
- 2. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 3. On the Finishing tab, select Print on Both Sides.
- Click OK.
- 5. Send the print job to the printer.
- 6. Go to the printer. Remove any blank paper that is in tray 1. Insert the printed stack with the blank side up, with the top-edge feeding into the printer *first*. You *must* print the second side from tray 1.
- 7. If prompted by a message at the control panel-display, press  $\checkmark$ .



**NOTE** If the number of total sheets exceeds the tray 1 capacity for manual duplex jobs, you must repeat steps 6 and 7 each time that paper is inserted, until the duplexing job is complete.



84

**CAUTION** Hewlett-Packard recommends manually reusing sheets only through tray 1. Do not reuse sheets through tray 2 or tray 3, as this can cause jams and print-quality problems.

## **Using features in the Windows printer driver**

When you print from a software program, many of the product features are available from the printer driver. For complete information about the features that are available in the printer driver, see the printer-driver Help. The following features are described in this section:

- Creating and using quick sets
- Using watermarks
- Resizing documents
- Setting a custom paper size from the printer driver
- Using different paper and printing covers
- Printing a blank first page
- Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper
- Using the Services tab



**NOTE** Settings in the printer driver and software program generally override control-panel settings. Software-program settings generally override printer-driver settings.

### Creating and using quick sets

Use quick sets to save the current driver settings for reuse. Quick sets are available on most printer-driver tabs. You can save up to 25 Print Task Quick Sets.

#### To create a quick set

- Open the printer driver (see <u>Gaining access to printer driver settings</u>).
- 2. Select the print settings that you want to use.
- 3. In the **Print Task Quick Sets** box, type a name for the quick set.
- 4. Click Save.

#### To use quick sets

- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 2. Select the quick set that you want to use from the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down list.
- 3. Click OK.



**NOTE** To use printer-driver default settings, select **Default Print Settings** from the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down list.

### **Using watermarks**

A watermark is a notice, such as "Confidential," that is printed in the background of each page of a document.

- Open the printer driver (see <u>Gaining access to printer driver settings</u>).
- 2. From the **Effects** tab, click the **Watermarks** drop-down list.
- 3. Click the watermark that you want to use. To create a new watermark, click Edit.
- 4. If you want the watermark to appear only on the first page of the document, click First Page Only.
- 5. Click OK.

To remove the watermark, click (none) in the Watermarks drop-down list.

### Resizing documents

Use the document resizing options to scale a document to a percentage of its normal size. You can also choose to print a document on a different size paper, with or without scaling.

#### To reduce or enlarge a document

- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- On the Effects tab, next to % of Normal Size, type the percentage by which you want to reduce or enlarge your document.

You can also use the scroll bar to adjust the percentage.

3. Click OK.

#### To print a document onto a different paper size

- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- On the Effects tab, click Print Document On.
- 3. Select the paper size to print on.
- To print the document without scaling it to fit, make sure that the Scale to Fit option is not selected.
- Click OK.

## Setting a custom paper size from the printer driver

- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- On the Paper or Paper/Quality tab, click Custom.
- 3. On the Custom Paper Size window, type the name of the custom paper size.
- **4.** Type the paper-size length and width. If you type a size that is too small or too large, the driver adjusts the size to the minimum or maximum size that is allowed.
- 5. If necessary, click the button to change the unit of measure between millimeters and inches.

- 6. Click Save.
- 7. Click Close. The name that you saved appears in the paper-size list for future use.

### Using different paper and printing covers

Follow these instructions for printing a first page that is different from other pages in the print job.

- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 2. On the Paper or Paper/Quality tab, select the appropriate paper for the first page of the print job.
- 3. Click Use Different Paper/Covers.
- 4. In the list box, click the pages or covers that you want to print on different paper.
- 5. To print front or back covers, you must also select **Add Blank or Preprinted Cover**.
- **6.** Select the appropriate paper type or source for the other pages of the print job.



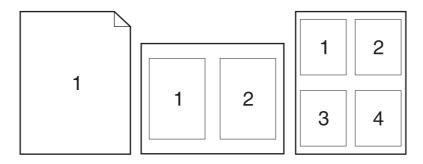
**NOTE** The paper size must be the same for all pages of the print job.

### Printing a blank first page

- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 2. On the Paper or Paper/Quality tab, click Use Different Paper/Covers.
- 3. In the list box, click **Front Cover**.
- 4. Click Add Blank or Preprinted Cover.

## Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper.



- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 2. Click the Finishing tab.

- 3. In the section for **Document Options**, select the number of pages that you want to print on each sheet (1, 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16).
- 4. If the number of pages is greater than 1, select the correct options for **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**.
- 5. Click **OK**. The product is now set to print the number of pages per sheet that you have selected.

### **Using the Services tab**



88

**NOTE** The **Services** tab is not available for Windows 9x.

If the product is connected to a network, use the **Services** tab to obtain product and supply-status information. Click the **Device and Supplies status icon** to open the **Device Status** page of the HP Embedded Web Server. This page shows the current status of the product, the percentage of life remaining for each supply, and information for ordering supplies.

## Using features in the Macintosh printer driver

When you print from a software program, many of the printer features are available from the printer driver. For complete information about the features that are available in the printer driver, see the printer-driver Help. The following features are described in this section:

- Creating and using presets
- Printing a cover page
- Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper
- Printing on both sides of the paper



**NOTE** Settings in the printer driver and software program generally override control-panel settings. Software-program settings generally override printer-driver settings.

### **Creating and using presets**

Use presets to save the current printer driver settings for reuse.

#### To create a preset

- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 2. Select the print settings.
- 3. In the **Presets** box, click **Save As...**, and type a name for the preset.
- Click OK.

#### To use presets

- Open the printer driver (see <u>Gaining access to printer driver settings</u>).
- 2. In the **Presets** menu, select the preset that you want to use.



**NOTE** To use printer-driver default settings, select the **Standard** preset.

### Printing a cover page

You can print a separate cover page for your document that includes a message (such as "Confidential").

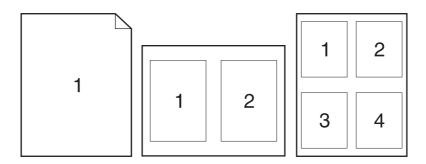
- Open the printer driver (see <u>Gaining access to printer driver settings</u>).
- On the Cover Page or Paper/Quality pop-up menu, select whether to print the cover page Before Document or After Document.
- In the Cover Page Type pop-up menu, select the message that you want to print on the cover page.



**NOTE** To print a blank cover page, select **Standard** as the **Cover Page Type**.

### Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper. This feature provides a cost-effective way to print draft pages.



- 1. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 2. Click the **Layout** pop-up menu.
- 3. Next to **Pages per Sheet**, select the number of pages that you want to print on each sheet (1, 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16).
- 4. Next to Layout Direction, select the order and placement of the pages on the sheet.
- 5. Next to Borders, select the type of border to print around each page on the sheet.

### Printing on both sides of the paper

When duplex printing is available, you can automatically print on both sides of a page. Otherwise, you can manually print on both sides of a page by feeding the paper through the printer a second time.



90

**CAUTION** To avoid jams, do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28-lb bond).

#### To use automatic duplex printing

- 1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
  - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first.
  - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper face-down with the top edge at the back of the tray.
- 2. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 3. Open the **Layout** pop-up menu.

- 4. Next to Two Sided Printing, select either Long-Edge Binding or Short-Edge Binding.
- 5. Click Print.

#### To print on both sides manually

- 1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
  - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first.
  - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper face-down with the top edge at the back of the tray.



**CAUTION** To avoid jams, do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m<sup>2</sup> (28-lb bond).

- 2. Open the printer driver (see Gaining access to printer driver settings).
- 3. On the **Finishing** pop-up menu, select the **Manual Duplex** option.



**NOTE** If the **Manual Duplex** option is not enabled, select **Manually Print on 2nd Side**.

- 4. Click **Print**. Follow the instructions in the pop-up window that appears on the computer screen before replacing the output stack in tray 1 for printing the second half.
- **5**. Go to the printer, and remove any blank paper that is in tray 1.
- 6. Insert the printed stack face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first in tray 1. You *must* print the second side from tray 1.
- 7. If prompted, press the appropriate control-panel button to continue.

## Managing special printing situations

### Printing a different first page

Use the following procedure to print the first page of a document on a different media type than the remainder of the document. For example, you can print the first page of a document on letterhead paper and the remainder on plain paper.

- 1. From your software program or printer driver, specify a tray for the first page and another tray for the remaining pages.
- 2. Load the special media into the tray that you specified in step 1.
- 3. Load the media for the remaining pages of the document into another tray.
- Print the document.

You can also print on different media by using the printer control panel or printer driver to set the types of media that are loaded in the trays and then selecting the first and remaining pages by media type.

### Stopping a print request

You can stop a print request by using the printer control panel or using your software program. For instructions on how to stop a print request from a computer on a network, see the online Help for the specific network software.



92

**NOTE** It can take some time for all printing to clear after you have canceled a print job.

### To stop the current print job from the printer control panel

- 1. Press Stop on the printer control panel.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CANCEL CURRENT JOB, and then press ✓ to cancel the job.

If the print job is too far into the printing process, you might not have the option to cancel it.

#### To stop the current print job from the software program

A dialog box will appear briefly on the screen, giving you the option to cancel the print job.

If several requests have been sent to the printer through your software, they might be waiting in a print queue (for example, in Windows Print Manager). See the software documentation for specific instructions about canceling a print request from the computer.

If a print job is waiting in a print queue (computer memory) or print spooler (Windows 98, 2000, XP, or Me), delete the print job there.

For Windows 98 or Windows Me, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**. For Windows 2000 and Windows XP, click **Start** and then click **Printers**. Double-click the HP LaserJet 5200 printer icon to open the print spooler. Select the print job that you want to cancel, and then press Delete. If the print job is not cancelled, you might need to shut down and restart the computer.

## **Managing stored jobs**



**NOTE** This feature is available only for printers that have installed hard drives.

To store print jobs on the printer, use the **Job Storage** tab in the printer driver **Properties** dialog box. After a job is stored, you can print it or delete it from the printer control panel.

#### To print a stored job

- 1. Press Menu.
- Press ▼ to highlight RETRIEVE JOB, and then press ✓.

A list of users appears. If no jobs are stored, then the message NO STORED JOBS appears.

- Press ▼ to highlight your user name, and then press ✓.
  - If you have more than one stored job that is protected by a personal identification number (PIN), the ALL PRIVATE JOBS menu item appears. If you want to print one of the PINprotected jobs, highlight ALL PRIVATE JOBS, and then press ✓.
- **4.** Press ▼ to highlight the correct print job, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight PRINT, and then press ✓.
  - If the job is *not* PIN-protected, go to step 7.
- 6. If prompted, provide a PIN by pressing ▲ or ▼ to change the number. Press ✓ after you have specified each number of the four-digit PIN.
- 7. Press ▲ and ▼ to specify the number of copies, and then press ✓ to print the job.

#### To delete a stored job

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight **RETRIEVE JOB**, and then press ✓.

A list of users appears. If there are no stored jobs, then the message **NO STORED JOBS** appears.

- Press ▼ to highlight your user name, and then press ✓.
  - If you have more than one stored job that is PIN-protected, the ALL PRIVATE JOBS menu item appears. If you want to delete one of the PIN-protected jobs, highlight ALL PRIVATE JOBS, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight the correct print job, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight DELETE, and then press ✓.

If the job is *not* PIN-protected, the printer deletes the job.

6. If prompted, provide a PIN by pressing ▲ or ▼ to change the number. Press ✓ after you have specified each number of the four-digit PIN.

The printer deletes the job after you set the fourth PIN digit and press ✓.

ENWW Managing stored jobs 93

## **Managing memory**

The printer supports up to 512 MB of memory. You can add additional memory by installing a dual inline memory module (DIMM) in the DIMM slot, which accepts 32, 48, 64, 128, 256, or 512 MB of RAM. For information about installing memory, see Working with memory and print server cards.

The printer uses 100-pin 133 MHz DDR memory modules. Extended data output (EDO) DIMMs are not supported.



94

**NOTE** If memory problems occur when you are printing complex graphics, you can make more memory available by removing downloaded fonts, style sheets, and macros from printer memory. Reducing the complexity of a print job from within a program can help avoid memory problems.

**NOTE** Be sure to update the printer configuration in the printer driver after adding memory. See <u>Enabling memory for Windows</u>.

# **5** Managing the printer

This chapter describes how to manage the printer:

- Using printer information pages
- Configuring e-mail alerts
- Using the embedded Web server
- Using HP Web Jetadmin software
- <u>Using the HP Easy Printer Care software</u>
- Using the HP Printer Utility for Macintosh

ENWW 95

# **Using printer information pages**

From the printer control panel, you can print pages that give details about the printer and its current configuration. The table below provides the procedures for printing the information pages.

Page description	How to print the page
Menu map	1. Press Menu.
Shows the control-panel menus and available settings.	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to highlight INFORMATION, and then press ▼.</li> </ol>
available settings.	<ol> <li>If PRINT MENU MAP is not highlighted, press ▲ or ▼ until it is highlighted, and then press ▼.</li> </ol>
	The content of the menu map varies, depending on the options currently installed in the printer.
	For a complete list of control panel menus and possible values, see <u>Using the control-panel menus</u> .
Configuration page	1. Press Menu.
Shows printer settings and installed accessories.	2. Press ▼ to highlight INFORMATION, and then press ✓.
	3. Press ▼ to highlight <b>PRINT CONFIGURATION</b> , and then press ✓.
	NOTE If the printer contains an HP Jetdirect print server or an optional hard disk drive, an additional configuration page prints that provides information about those devices.
Supplies status page	1. Press Menu.
Shows print-cartridge toner levels.	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to highlight INFORMATION, and then press ✓.</li> </ol>
	3. Press ▼ to highlight <b>PRINT SUPPLIES STATUS PAGE</b> , and then press ✓.
	NOTE If you are using non-HP supplies, the supplies status page might not show the remaining life for those supplies. For more information, see HP policy on non-HP print cartridges.
Usage page	1. Press Menu.
Shows a page count for each size of paper printed, the number of one-	2. Press ▼ to highlight INFORMATION, and then press ✓.
sided (simplexed) or two-sided (duplexed) pages, and the average percentage of coverage.	3. Press ▼ to highlight <b>PRINT USAGE PAGE</b> , and then press ✓.

Page description	How to print the page			
File directory	1. Press Menu.			
Shows information for all installed mass storage devices.	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to highlight INFORMATION, and then press ▼.</li> </ol>			
mass storage devices.	3. Press ▼ to highlight <b>PRINT FILE DIRECTORY</b> , and then press ✓.			
	NOTE This option does not appear if no mass storage devices are installed.			
PCL or PS font list	1. Press Menu.			
Shows which fonts are currently installed in the printer.	2. Press ▼ to highlight <b>INFORMATION</b> , and then press ✓.			
·	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to highlight PRINT PCL FONT LIST or PRINT PS FONT LIST, and then press ✓.</li> </ol>			
	NOTE The font lists also show which fonts are resident on an optional hard disk accessory or flash DIMM.			

# **Configuring e-mail alerts**



NOTE If your company does not have e-mail, this feature might not be available.

You can use HP Web Jetadmin or the embedded Web server to configure the system to alert you of problems with the printer. The alerts take the form of e-mail messages to the e-mail account(s) that you specify.

You can configure the following:

- The printer(s) you want to monitor
- The alerts you want to receive (for example, alerts for paper jams, paper out, supplies status, and cover open)
- The e-mail account(s) to which the alerts should be forwarded

Software	Information location
HP Web Jetadmin	See <u>Using HP Web Jetadmin software</u> for general information about HP Web Jetadmin.
	See the HP Web Jetadmin Help system for details about alerts and how to set them up.
Embedded Web server	See <u>Using the embedded Web server</u> for general information about the embedded Web server.
	See the embedded Web server Help system for details about alerts and how to set them up.

# Using the embedded Web server



**NOTE** When the printer is directly connected to a computer, use the HP Easy Printer Care software to view the printer status.

- View printer control status information
- Set the type of paper loaded in each tray
- Determine the remaining life on all supplies and order new ones
- View and change tray configurations
- View and change the printer control panel menu configuration
- View and print internal pages
- Receive notification of printer and supplies events
- View and change network configuration
- View support content that is specific to the current state of the printer

When the printer is connected to the network, the embedded Web server is automatically available. You can open the embedded Web server from Windows 95 and later.

To use the embedded Web server, you must have Microsoft Internet Explorer 4 and later or Netscape Navigator 4 and later. The embedded Web server works when the printer is connected to an IP-based network. The embedded Web server does not support IPX-based or AppleTalk printer connections. You do not need Internet access to open and use the embedded Web server.

## Opening the embedded Web server

1. In a supported Web browser on your computer, type the IP address for the printer. To find the IP address, print a configuration page. For more information about printing a configuration page, see Using printer information pages.



**NOTE** After you open the URL, you can bookmark it so that you can return to it quickly in the future.

- The embedded Web server has three tabs that contain settings and information about the printer: the **Information** tab, the **Settings** tab, and the **Networking** tab. Click the tab that you want to view.
- 3. See the following sections for more information about each tab.

## To access the embedded Web server by using a network connection

 In a supported Web browser on your computer, type the IP address for the printer in the address/URL field. (To find the IP address, print a configuration page. See <u>Using printer</u> <u>information pages</u>.)



**NOTE** After you open the URL, you can bookmark it so that you can return to it quickly in the future.

2. The embedded Web server has three tabs that contain settings and information about the printer: the **Information** tab, the **Settings** tab, and the **Networking** tab. Click the tab that you want to view.

See the following section for more information about each tab.

#### **Embedded Web server sections**

Tab or section	Options				
Information tab Provides printer, status, and configuration information	<ul> <li>Device Status: Shows the printer status and shows the life remaining of HP supplies, with 0% indicating that a supply is empty. The page also shows the type and size of print paper set for each tray. To change the default settings, click Change Settings.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Configuration Page: Shows the information found on the printer configuration page.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Supplies Status: Shows the life remaining of HP supplies, with 0 percent indicating that a supply is empty. This page also provides supplies part numbers. To order new supplies, click Order Supplies in the Other Links area on the left side of the window.</li> </ul>				
	Event log: Shows a list of all printer events and errors.				
	<ul> <li>Usage page: Shows a summary of the number of pages the printer has printed, grouped by size and type.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Device Information: Shows the printer network name, address, and model information. To change these entries, click Device Information on the Settings tab.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Control Panel: Shows messages from the printer control panel, such as Ready of Sleep mode on.</li> </ul>				
	Print: Allows you to send print jobs to the printer.				
Settings tab	<ul> <li>Configure Device: Allows you to configure printer settings. This page contains the traditional menus found on printers using a control-panel display.</li> </ul>				
Provides the ability to configure the printer from your computer	<ul> <li>E-mail Server: Network only. Used in conjunction with the Alerts page to set up incoming and outgoing e-mail, as well as to set e-mail alerts.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Alerts: Network only. Allows you to set up to receive e-mail alerts for various printer and supplies events.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>AutoSend: Allows you to configure the printer to send automated e-mails regarding printer configuration and supplies to specific e-mail addresses.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>Security: Allows you to set a password that must be entered to gain access to the Settings and Networking tabs. Enable and disable certain features of the embedded Web server.</li> </ul>				

#### Tab or section

#### **Options**

- Edit Other Links: Allows you to add or customize a link to another Web site. This
  link is displayed in the Other Links area on all embedded Web server pages.
- Device Information: Allows you to name the printer and assign an asset number to it. Enter the name and e-mail address for the primary contact who will receive information about the printer.
- Language: Allows you to determine the language in which to display the embedded Web server information.
- Date & Time: Allows time synchronization with a network time server.
- Wake Time: Allows you to set or edit a wake time for the printer.



**NOTE** The **Settings** tab can be password-protected. If this printer is on a network, always consult with the printer administrator before changing settings on this tab.

#### **Networking** tab

Provides the ability to change network settings from your computer Network administrators can use this tab to control network-related settings for the printer when it is connected to an IP-based network. This tab does not appear if the printer is directly connected to a computer, or if the printer is connected to a network using anything other than an HP Jetdirect print server.



**NOTE** The **Networking** tab can be password-protected.

#### Other links

Contains links that connect you to the Internet

- HP Instant Support™: Connects you to the HP Web site to help you find solutions. This service analyzes your printer error log and configuration information to provide diagnostic and support information specific to your printer.
- Order Supplies: Connects to the HP Web site, in which you can order genuine HP supplies, such as print cartridges and paper.
- Product Support: Connects to the support site for the printer, from which you can search for help regarding general topics.



**NOTE** You must have Internet access in order to use any of these links. If you use a dial-up connection and did not connect when you first opened the embedded Web server, you must connect before you can visit these Web sites. Connecting might require that you close the embedded Web server and reopen it.

# **Using HP Web Jetadmin software**

HP Web Jetadmin is a Web-based software solution for remotely installing, monitoring, and troubleshooting network-connected peripherals. The intuitive browser interface simplifies cross-platform management of a wide range of devices, including HP and non-HP printers. Management is proactive, allowing network administrators the ability to resolve printer issues before users are affected. Download this free, enhanced-management software at <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/www.hp.com/go/www.hp.com/go/www.hp.com/go/www.hp.com/go/www.hp.com/go/wwbjetadmin\_software">www.hp.com/go/www.hp.com/go/wwbjetadmin\_software</a>.

To obtain plug-ins to HP Web Jetadmin, click **plug-ins**, and then click the **download** link that is next to the name of the plug-in that you want. The HP Web Jetadmin software can automatically notify you when new plug-ins are available. On the **Product Update** page, follow the directions to automatically connect to the HP Web site.

If installed on a host server, HP Web Jetadmin is available to any client through a supported Web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 for Windows or Netscape Navigator 7.1 for Linux. Browse to the HP Web Jetadmin host.



**NOTE** Browsers must be Java-enabled. Browsing from an Apple PC is not supported.

# **Using the HP Easy Printer Care software**

The HP Easy Printer Care software is a program that you can use for the following tasks:

- Check the printer status.
- Check supplies status.
- Set up alerts.
- Gain access to troubleshooting and maintenance tools.

You can use the HP Easy Printer Care software when the printer is directly connected to your computer or when it is connected to a network. You must perform a complete software installation to use the HP Easy Printer Care software.



**NOTE** You do not have to have Internet access to open and use the HP Easy Printer Care software. However, if you click a Web-based link, you must have Internet access to go to the site associated with the link.

## Supported operating systems

The HP Easy Printer Care software is supported for Windows 2000 and Windows XP.

## **Supported browsers**

To use the HP Easy Printer Care software, you must have one of the following browsers:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 or later
- Netscape Navigator 7.0 or later
- Opera Software ASA Opera 6.05 or later

All pages can be printed from the browser.

## To open the HP Easy Printer Care software

Use one of the following methods to open HP Easy Printer Care software:

- On the **Start** menu, select **Programs**, select **HP**, and then select **HP Easy Printer Care software**.
- In the Windows system tray (in the lower-right corner of the desktop), double-click the HP Easy Printer Care software icon.
- Double-click the desktop icon.

# **HP Easy Printer Care software sections**

Section	Options			
<b>Overview</b> tab	Devices list: Shows the printers that you can select.			
Contains basic status information for the printer	<b>Device Status</b> section: Shows printer status information. This section will indicate printer alert conditions, such as an empty print cartridge. It also shows device-identification information, control-panel messages, and print-cartridge levels. After you correct a problem with the printer, click the <b>5</b> button to update the section.			
	• Supplies Status section: Shows detailed supplies status, such as the percentage of toner remaining in the print cartridge and the status of the media that is loaded in each tray.			
	<ul> <li>Supplies Details link: Opens the supplies status page to view more detailed information about printer supplies, ordering information, and recycling information.</li> </ul>			
Support tab	Provides device information, including alerts for items needing attention.			
Provides help	Provides links to troubleshooting information and tools.			
information and links	Provides links to the HP Web site for registration, support, and for ordering supplies.			
	NOTE If you use a dial-up connection and did not connect to the Internet when you first opened the HP Easy Printer Care software, you must connect before you can visit these Web sites.			
Supplies Ordering window	Ordering list: Shows the supplies that you can order for each printer. If you want to order a certain item, click the <b>Order</b> check box for that item in the supplies list.			
Provides access to online or e-mail supplies ordering	<b>Shop Online for Supplies</b> button: Opens the HP supplies Web site in a new browser window. If you have checked the <b>Order</b> check box for any items, the information about those items can be transferred to the Web site.			
	<ul> <li>Print Shopping List button: Prints the information for the supplies that have the Order check box selected.</li> </ul>			
	• Email Shopping List button: Creates a text list of items that have the Order check box selected. The list can be copied into an e-mail message that you send to your supplier.			
Alert Settings window	Alerts on or off: Activates or deactivates the alerts feature for a certain printer.			
Allows you to configure the printer to	• When alerts appear: Sets when you want alerts to appear—either when you are printing to that particular printer, or anytime there is a printer event.			
automatically notify you of printer issues	<ul> <li>Alert event type: Sets whether you want alerts for only critical errors, or for any error, including continuable errors.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>Notification type: Sets what type of alert should appear (pop-up message or system tray alert, and e-mail message).</li> </ul>			
Device List tab	Printer information, including printer name, make, and model			
Shows information	An icon (if the <b>View as</b> drop-down box is set to <b>Tiles</b> , which is the default setting)			
about each printer in the  Devices list	Any current alerts for the printer			
	If you click a printer in the list, the HP Easy Printer Care software opens the <b>Overview</b> tab for that printer.			
Find Other Printers window	Clicking the <b>Find Other Printers</b> link in the <b>Devices</b> list opens the <b>Find Other Printers</b> window. The <b>Find Other Printers</b> window provides a utility that detects other network printers so that you can add them to the <b>Devices</b> list and then monitor those printers from your computer.			
Allows you to add more printers to your printer list	22. 22. 2.5. to the 2011000 list and their monitor those printers from your computer.			

# **Using the HP Printer Utility for Macintosh**

Use the HP Printer Utility to configure and maintain a printer from a Mac OS X computer.

## **Opening the HP Printer Utility**

#### To open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.2

- 1. Open the Finder, and then click **Applications**.
- 2. Click **Library**, and then click **Printers**.
- 3. Click **hp**, and then click **Utilities**.
- 4. Double-click **HP Printer Selector** to open the HP Printer Selector.
- 5. Select the printer that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

#### To open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.3 or V10.4

1. In the Dock, click the Printer Setup Utility icon.



**NOTE** If the **Printer Setup Utility** icon does not appear in the Dock, open the Finder, click **Applications**, click **Utilities**, and then double-click **Printer Setup Utility**.

2. Select the printer that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

## **HP Printer Utility features**

The HP Printer Utility consists of pages that you open by clicking in the **Configuration Settings** list. The following table describes the tasks that you can perform from these pages.

Item	Description
Configuration Page	Prints a configuration page.
Supplies Status	Shows the printer supplies status and provides links for online supplies-ordering.
HP Support	Provides access to technical assistance, online supplies ordering, online registration, and recycling and return information.
File Upload	Transfers files from the computer to the printer.
Upload Fonts	Transfers font files from the computer to the printer.
Firmware Update	Transfers updated firmware files from the computer to the printer.
Duplex Mode	Turns on the automatic two-sided printing mode.
Economode & Toner Density	Turns on the Economode setting to conserve toner, or adjusts toner density.
Resolution	Changes the resolution settings, including the REt setting.
Lock Resources	Locks or unlocks storage devices, such as a hard disk.
Stored Jobs	Manages print jobs that are stored on the printer hard disk.
Trays Configuration	Changes the default printer tray settings.
IP Settings	Changes the printer network settings and provides access to the embedded Web server.

Item	Description
Bonjour Settings	Provides the ability to turn on or off Bonjour support or change the printer service name that is listed on a network.
Additional Settings	Provides access to the embedded Web server.
E-mail Alerts	Configures the printer to send e-mail notices for certain events.

# 6 Maintenance

This chapter describes ways to maintain the printer:

- Managing supplies
- Replacing supplies and parts
- Cleaning the printer

ENWW 107

# **Managing supplies**

Using, storing, and monitoring the print cartridge can help ensure high-quality printer output.

## Supplies life

The average cartridge yield is 12,000 pages in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752. Actual cartridge yield depends on specific use.

## Approximate print-cartridge replacement intervals

Print cartridge	Page count	Approximate time period <sup>1</sup>
Black	12,000 pages <sup>2</sup>	6 months

Approximate life is based on 2,000 pages per month.

To order supplies online, go to www.hp.com/support/lj5200.

## Managing the print cartridge

#### Print-cartridge life expectancy

The average cartridge yield is 12,000 pages in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752. Actual cartridge yield depends on specific use.



**CAUTION** Hewlett-Packard does not recommend full-time use of EconoMode. (If EconoMode is used consistently to print media with less than 5% toner coverage, the toner supply might outlast the mechanical parts in the print cartridge.)

## Print-cartridge storage

Do not remove the print cartridge from its package until you are ready to use it.



**CAUTION** To prevent damage to the print cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes.

#### **HP** print cartridges

When you use a genuine new HP print cartridge, you can obtain the following supplies information:

- Percentage of supplies remaining
- Estimated number of pages remaining
- Number of pages printed

#### HP policy on non-HP print cartridges

Hewlett-Packard Company cannot recommend the use of non-HP print cartridges, either new or remanufactured. Because they are not HP products, HP cannot influence their design or control their quality.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Approximate average A4-/letter-size page count based on approximately 5% coverage.



**CAUTION** Any damage caused by a non-HP print cartridge is not covered under the HP warranty and service agreements.

To install a new HP print cartridge, see <u>Changing the print cartridge</u>. To recycle the used cartridge, follow the instructions included with the new cartridge.

#### **Print-cartridge authentication**

The printer automatically authenticates the print cartridge when it is inserted into the printer. During authentication, the printer will let you know whether a cartridge is a genuine HP print cartridge.

If the printer control-panel message states that this is not a genuine HP print cartridge and you believe you purchased an HP print cartridge, see HP fraud hotline and Web site.

#### HP fraud hotline and Web site

Call the HP fraud hotline (1-877-219-3183, toll-free in North America) or go to <a href="www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit">www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit</a> when you install an HP print cartridge and the printer message says the cartridge is non-HP. HP will help determine if the product is genuine and take steps to resolve the problem.

Your print cartridge might not be a genuine HP print cartridge if you notice the following:

- You are experiencing a high number of problems with the print cartridge.
- The cartridge does not look like it usually does (for example, the orange pull tab is missing, or the packaging differs from HP packaging).

ENWW Managing supplies 109

# Replacing supplies and parts

Carefully follow the guidelines in this section when replacing printer supplies.

## Supply replacement guidelines

To facilitate the replacement of supplies, keep the following guidelines in mind when setting up the printer.

- Sufficient space is required above and in the front of the printer for removing supplies.
- The printer should be located on a flat, sturdy surface.

For instructions on installing supplies, see the installation guides provided with each supply item or see more information at <a href="https://www.hp.com/support/lj5200">www.hp.com/support/lj5200</a>.



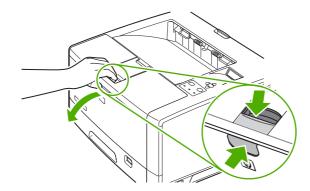
**CAUTION** Hewlett-Packard recommends the use of HP products in this printer. Use of non-HP products may cause problems requiring service that is not covered by the HP warranty or service agreements.

## Changing the print cartridge

When a print cartridge approaches the end of useful life, a message appears on the control panel recommending that you order a replacement. The printer can continue to print using the current print cartridge until a message appears instructing you to replace the cartridge.

## To change the print cartridge

1. Open the front cover.

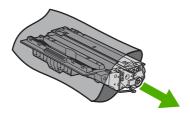


Chapter 6 Maintenance

2. Remove the used print cartridge from the printer.



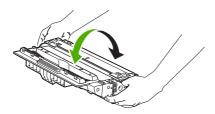
**3.** Remove the new print cartridge from the bag. Place the used print cartridge in the bag for recycling.



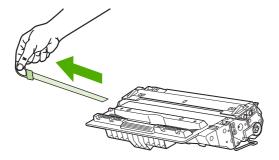
**4.** Grasp both sides of the print cartridge and distribute the toner by gently rocking the print cartridge.



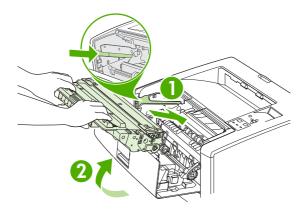
**CAUTION** Do not touch the shutter or the surface of the roller.



**5.** Remove the shipping tape from the new print cartridge. Discard the shipping tape according to local regulations.



6. Align the print cartridge with the tracks inside the printer, and, using the handle, insert the print cartridge until it is firmly seated, and then close the front door.



After a short time, the control panel should display **Ready**.

- Installation is complete. Place the used print cartridge in the box in which the new cartridge arrived. See the enclosed recycling guide for recycling instructions.
- 8. If you are using a non-HP print cartridge, check the printer control panel for further instructions.

For additional help, go to www.hp.com/support/lj5200.

# Cleaning the printer

During the printing process, paper, toner, and dust particles can accumulate inside the printer. Over time, this buildup can cause print-quality problems, such as toner specks or smearing (see <a href="Troubleshooting print-quality problems">Troubleshooting print-quality problems</a>). This printer has a cleaning mode that can correct and prevent these types of problems.

## To clean the printer using the printer control panel

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**, and then press ✓.
  - NOTE If your printer has an automatic duplexer, go to step 7.
- Press ▼ to highlight CREATE CLEANING PAGE, and then press ✓.
- Remove all paper from tray 1.
- Remove the cleaning page and load it face-down in tray 1.
  - NOTE If you are not in the menus, navigate to **PRINT QUALITY** by using the previous instructions.
- 7. At the printer control panel, press ▼ to highlight PROCESS CLEANING PAGE, and then press ✓.

ENWW Cleaning the printer 113

# 7 Problem solving

This troubleshooting information is organized to help you resolve printing problems. Choose the general topic or type of problem from the following list.

- Basic troubleshooting checklist
- Troubleshooting flowchart
- Solving general printing problems
- Control-panel message types
- Control-panel messages
- Guidelines for using paper
- Printing special pages
- Common causes of jams
- Jam locations
- Clearing jams
- Troubleshooting print-quality problems
- Troubleshooting network printing problems
- Troubleshooting common Windows problems
- Troubleshooting common Macintosh problems
- Troubleshooting Linux problems
- Troubleshooting common PostScript problems

ENWW 115

# **Basic troubleshooting checklist**

If you are experiencing problems with the printer, use the following checklist to identify the cause of the problem:

- Is the printer connected to power?
- Is the printer on?
- Is the printer in the Ready state?
- Are all necessary cables connected?
- Do any messages appear on the control panel?
- Are genuine HP supplies installed?
- Was a recently replaced print cartridge installed correctly, and was the pull tab on the cartridge removed?

For additional information about installation and setup, see the printer getting started guide.

If you cannot find solutions to printer problems in this guide, go to www.hp.com/support/lj5200.

## Factors that affect printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job:

- Maximum printer speed, measured in pages per minute (ppm)
- The use of special paper (such as transparencies, heavy paper, and custom-size paper)
- Printer processing and download time
- The complexity and size of graphics
- The speed of the computer you are using
- The USB connection
- The printer I/O configuration
- The amount of printer memory installed
- The network operating system and configuration (if applicable)
- Printer personality (PCL or PS)



**NOTE** Although additional printer memory can resolve memory problems, improve how the printer handles complex graphics, and improve download times, it will not increase maximum printer speed (ppm).

# **Troubleshooting flowchart**

If the printer is not responding correctly, use the flowchart to determine the problem. If the printer does not pass a step, follow the corresponding troubleshooting suggestions.

If you cannot resolve the problem after following the suggestions in this guide, contact an HPauthorized service or support provider. (See HP Customer Care.)



NOTE Macintosh users: For more troubleshooting information, see <u>Troubleshooting</u> common Macintosh problems.

## Step 1: Does READY appear on the control-panel display?

YES →		Go to step 2.							
NO	no ↓								
The display is blank, and the printer fan is off.		The display is blank, but the printer fan is on.		The display is in the wrong language.		The display shows garbled or unfamiliar characters.		A message other than READY appears on the control-panel display.	
•	Turn the printer off and then on.  Check the power cord connections and the power switch.  Plug the printer into a different outlet.  Check that the power supplied to the printer is steady, and meets printer specifications. (See Electrical specifications.)	•	Press a printer control-panel button to see if the printer responds.  Turn the printer off and then on.	•	Turn the printer off and then on. When XXX MB appears on the control-panel display, press and hold down until all three lights stay on. This could take up to 10 seconds. Then, release . Press to scroll through the available languages. Press to save the appropriate language as the new default.	•	Make sure that the appropriate language is selected at the printer control panel.  Turn the printer off and then on.	•	Go to Controlpanel messages.

## Step 2: Can you print a configuration page?

(See <u>Using printer information pages</u>.)

YES →	Go to step 3.
NO ↓	

A configuration page does not print.	A blank page prints.	A message other than READY or PRINTING CONFIGURATION appears on the control-panel display.
--------------------------------------	----------------------	--

- Check that all trays are correctly loaded, adjusted, and installed in the printer.
- Using the computer, check the print queue or print spooler to see if the printer has been paused. If there are problems with the current print job, or if the printer is paused, a configuration page will not print. (Press Stop and try step 2 in the troubleshooting flowchart again.)
- Check that the sealing tape does not remain on the print cartridge.
   (See the getting started guide or the instructions that came with the print cartridge.)
- The print cartridge might be empty. Install a new print cartridge.
- Go to Control-panel messages.

# Step 3: Can you print from a program?

YES →	Go to step 4.	

### мо√

#### The job will not print.

- If the job will not print, and a message appears on the printer controlpanel display, see <u>Control-panel messages</u>.
- Using the computer, check to see if the printer has been paused.
   Press Stop to continue.
- If the printer is on a network, check that you are printing to the correct printer. To verify that it is not a network problem, connect the computer directly to the printer with a parallel or USB cable, change the port to LPT1, and try to print.
- Check the interface cable connections. Disconnect and reconnect the cable at the computer and the printer.
- Test the cable by trying it on another computer.
- If you are using a parallel connection, make sure that the cable is IEEE-1284 compliant.
- If the printer is on a network, print a configuration page. (See <u>Using printer information pages</u>.) If an HP Jetdirect print server is installed, a Jetdirect page also prints. Check the Jetdirect configuration page to verify that the network protocol status and settings are correct for the printer.
- To verify that it is not a computer problem, print from another computer (if possible).
- Make sure that the print job is being sent to the correct port (LPT1 or network printer port, for example).
- Check that you are using the correct printer driver. (See <u>Printer drivers</u>.)
- Reinstall the printer driver. (See the getting started guide.)

#### A PS error page or list of commands prints.

- The printer might have received a nonstandard PS code. On the SYSTEM SETUP submenu (on the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu) at the printer control panel, set PERSONALITY=PS for this print job only. After the job has printed, return the setting to AUTO.
- Make sure that the print job is a PS job, and that you are using the PS driver.
- The printer might have received PS code although it is set to PCL. On the SYSTEM SETUP submenu (on the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu), set PERSONALITY=AUTO.

- Check that the computer port is configured and working correctly.
   (Try connecting another printer to that port and printing.)
- If printing with the PS driver, on the PRINTING submenu (on the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu) at the printer control panel, set PRINT PS ERRORS=ON, and then print the job again. If an error page prints, see the instructions in the next column.
- On the SYSTEM SETUP submenu (on the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu) at the printer control panel, make sure that PERSONALITY=AUTO.
- You might be missing a printer message that could help you solve the problem. On the SYSTEM SETUP submenu (on the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu) at the printer control panel, temporarily turn off the CLEARABLE WARNINGS and AUTO CONTINUE settings. Then, print the job again.

# Step 4: Does the job print as expected?

YES	$\rightarrow$	Go to step 5.		
мо√	No ↓			
	is garbled, or only a on of the page prints.	Printing stops in the middle of the job.	Print speed is slower than expected.	A printer control panel setting is not taking effect.
•	Check that you are using the correct printer driver. (See Printer drivers.)  The data file sent to the printer might be corrupt. To test, try printing it on another printer (if possible), or try a different file.  Check the interface cable connections. Test the cable by trying it on another computer (if possible).  Replace the interface cable with a high-quality cable (see Part numbers).	You might have pressed Stop.      Check that the power supplied to the printer is steady, and that it meets printer specifications. (See Electrical specifications.)	<ul> <li>Simplify the print job.</li> <li>Add more memory to the printer. (See Installing printer memory.)</li> <li>Turn banner pages off. (See your network administrator.)</li> <li>Note that slower speeds should be expected if you are printing narrow paper, printing from tray 1, using the HIGH 2 fuser mode, or have set Small Paper Speed to SLOW.</li> </ul>	Check settings in the printer driver or program. (The printer driver and program settings override printer control-panel settings.)
	Simplify the print job, print at a lower resolution, or install more printer memory. (See Installing printer memory.)			
	You might be missing a printer message that could help you solve the problem. On the			

# SYSTEM SETUP submenu (on the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu) at the printer control panel, temporarily turn the CLEARABLE WARNINGS and AUTO CONTINUE settings off. Then print

	the job again.		
The print job is not formatted correctly.		Paper is not fed correctly or is damaged.	There are print-quality problems.
•	Check that you are using the correct printer driver. (See Printer drivers.)	Make sure that the paper is loaded correctly and that the guides are not too tight or too loose against the	<ul> <li>Adjust the print resolution. (See <u>Print Quality submenu</u>.)</li> <li>Check that REt is on. (See <u>Print Quality submenu</u>.)</li> <li>Go to <u>Troubleshooting print-quality problems</u>.</li> </ul>
•	Check the program settings. (See the program online Help.)	stack.  If you are having problems printing	
•	Try a different font.  Downloaded resources might have been lost. You might need to	custom-size paper, see Printing on special media.	
	download them again.	<ul> <li>If pages are wrinkled or curled, or if the image is skewed on the page, see <u>Troubleshooting</u> <u>print-quality problems</u>.</li> </ul>	

# **Step 5: Does the printer select the trays?**

YES →		For other problems, check the Contents, the Index, or the printer driver online Help.		
NO	по√			
The printer pulls paper from the wrong tray.		An optional tray is not working correctly.	A message other than READY appears on the printer control panel display.	
•	Make sure that you have selected the correct tray. (See Source.)  Make sure that trays are correctly configured for paper size and type. (See Configuring trays.)  Print a configuration page to see current tray settings. (See Using printer information pages.) Ensure that the media-size window on the front of the tray matches the size setting on the control panel.	<ul> <li>Print a configuration page to verify that the tray is installed correctly and is functional. (See <u>Using printer information pages</u>.)</li> <li>Configure the printer driver to recognize the installed tray. (See the printer driver online Help.)</li> <li>Turn the printer off and then on.</li> <li>Verify that you are using the correct optional tray for the printer.</li> </ul>	Go to Control-panel messages.	
•	Make sure that the tray selection (Source) or Type in the printer driver or program is set correctly.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		

- (The printer driver and program settings override the printer control panel settings.)
- By default, paper loaded in tray 1 will be printed first. If you do not want to print from tray 1, remove any paper loaded in the tray or change the USE REQUESTED TRAY setting. (See <u>Customizing tray 1 operation</u>.) Change TRAY 1 SIZE and TRAY 1 TYPE to a setting other than ANY.
- If you want to print from tray 1, but cannot select the tray in a program, see <u>Customizing tray 1</u> <u>operation</u>.

# Solving general printing problems

#### Printer selects media from the wrong tray.

Cause	Solution
The tray selection in the software program might be incorrect.	For many software programs, the paper tray selection is found on the <b>Page Setup</b> menu within the program.
	Remove any media in other trays to make the printer select from the correct tray.
	For Macintosh computers, use the HP Printer Utility to change the priority of the tray.
The configured size does not match the size of the media that is loaded in the tray.	Through the control panel, change the configured size to match the size of the media that is loaded in the tray. Also, change the media-size window, located on front upper right of the tray, to match the media-size settings.
	<b>Tray 2 or tray 3</b> : Make sure that the media-size dial matches the media loaded in the tray.

#### Printer does not pull paper from tray.

Cause	Solution
The tray is empty.	Load paper in the tray.
The paper guides are set incorrectly.	To set the guides correctly, see Configuring trays.
	For tray 2 and tray 3, make sure that the leading edge of the paper stack is even. An uneven edge can prevent the lift plate from rising.

#### Paper curls when it exits the printer.

Cause	Solution
The paper curls when it exits to the top output bin.	Open the rear output bin to allow the paper to exit in a straight path through the printer.
	Turn over the paper that you are printing on.
	Reduce the fusing temperature to reduce the curling. (See Print Quality submenu.)

#### First sheet of media jams in the print-cartridge area.

Cause	Solution
A combination of high humidity and high temperature is affecting the media.	Adjust the printer for high humidity and high temperature conditions.

#### Print job is extremely slow.

Cause	Solution	
The job might be very complex.	Reduce the complexity of the page or try adjusting the print- quality settings. If this problem occurs frequently, add memory to the printer.	
The maximum speed of the printer cannot be exceeded even when more memory is added.		
Printing speeds might be automatically reduced when printing on custom-sized media.		
Note: Slower speeds are expected when printing on narrow paper, when printing from tray 1, or when using the <b>HIGH 2</b> fuser mode.		
You are printing a PDF or PostScript (PS) file but are using a PCL printer driver.	Try using the PS printer driver rather than the PCL printer driver. (You can usually do this from a software program.)	
In the printer driver, <b>Optimize for:</b> is set to cardstock, heavy, rough, or bond paper.	In the printer driver, set the type to plain paper (see Controlling print jobs).	
	NOTE If you change the setting to plain paper, the print job will print faster. However, if you are using heavy media, for best results leave the printer driver set to heavy even though printing might be slower.	

#### Print job prints on both sides of the paper.

Cause	Solution
The printer is set for duplexing.	See <u>Gaining access to printer driver settings</u> to change the setting, or see the online Help.

# Print job contains only one page but the printer processes the back side of the page as well (the page comes part of the way out, and then goes back into the printer).

Cause	Solution
The printer is set for duplexing. Even if the print job contains only one page, the printer also processes the back side.	See <u>Gaining access to printer driver settings</u> to change the setting, or see the online Help.
	Do not try to pull the page out of the printer before duplexing is complete. Jamming might result.

#### Pages print, but are totally blank.

Cause	Solution
The sealing tape might still be on the print cartridge.	Remove the print cartridge and pull out the sealing tape. Reinstall the print cartridge.
The file might have blank pages.	Check the file to make sure that it does not contain blank pages.

#### The printer prints, but the text is wrong, garbled, or incomplete.

Cause	Solution
The printer cable is loose or defective.	Disconnect the printer cable and reconnect it. Try a print job that you know works. If possible, attach the cable and printer to another computer and try a print job that you know works. Finally, try a new cable.
The printer is on a network or sharing device and is not receiving a clear signal.	Disconnect the printer from the network and use a parallel or USB cable to attach it directly to a computer. Print a job that you know works.
The wrong driver was selected in the software.	Check the software printer selection menu to make sure that an HP LaserJet 5200 printer is selected.
The software program is malfunctioning.	Try printing a job from another program.

#### The printer does not respond when you select Print in the software.

Cause	Solution
The printer is out of media.	Add media.
The printer might be in the manual-feed mode.	Change the printer from manual-feed mode.
The cable between the computer and the printer is not connected correctly.	Disconnect and reconnect the cable.
The printer cable is defective.	If possible, attach the cable to another computer and print a job that you know works. You might also try using a different cable.
The wrong printer was selected in the software.	Check the software printer selection menu to make sure that an HP LaserJet 5200 printer is selected.
The printer might have a jam.	Clear any jams, paying careful attention to the duplexer area (if your model has a duplexer). See <u>Clearing jams</u> .
The software for the printer is not configured for the printer port.	Check the software printer selection menu to make sure that it is using the correct port. If the computer has more than one port, make sure that the printer is attached to the correct one.
The printer is on a network and is not receiving a signal.	Disconnect the printer from the network and use a parallel or USB cable to attach it directly to a computer. Reinstall the printing software. Print a job that you know works.  Clear any stopped jobs from the print queue.
The printer is not receiving power.	If no lights are on, check the power cord connections. Check the power switch. Check the power source.
The printer is malfunctioning.	Check the control-panel display for messages and lights to determine if the printer is indicating an error. Note any message and see <a href="Control-panel messages">Control-panel messages</a> .

# **Control-panel message types**

Four types of control-panel messages can indicate the status of or problems with the printer.

Message type	Description	
Status messages	Status messages reflect the current state of the printer. They inform you of normal printer operation and require no interaction to clear them. They change as the state of the printer changes. Whenever the printer is ready, not busy, and has no pending warning messages, the status message <b>Ready</b> appears if the printer is online.	
Warning messages	Warning messages inform you of data and print errors. These messages typically alternate with the <b>Ready</b> or status messages and remain until the $\checkmark$ button is pressed. Some warning messages are clearable. If <b>CLEARABLE WARNINGS</b> is set to <b>JOB</b> on the printer <b>CONFIGURE DEVICE</b> menu, the next print job clears these messages.	
Error messages	Error messages communicate that some action must be performed, such as adding paper or clearing a jam.  Some error messages are auto-continuable. If <b>AUTO CONTINUE=ON</b> is set on the menus, the printer will continue normal operation after an auto-continuable error message appears for 10 seconds.	
	NOTE Pressing any button during the 10-second auto-continuable error message overrides the auto-continue feature, and the button function takes precedence. For example, pressing the Stop button pauses printing and offers the option to cancel the print job.	
Critical-error messages	Critical error messages inform you of a device failure. Some of these messages can be cleared by turning the printer off and then on. These messages are not affected by the <b>AUTO CONTINUE</b> setting. If a critical error persists, service is required.	

# **Control-panel messages**

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action		
10.32.YY UNAUTHORIZED SUPPLY  Unauthorized supply in use alternates with  For help press ?	A new, non-HP supply has been installed. This message appears until an HP supply is installed or you press 🗸.	If you believe you purchased an HP supply please go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/anticounterfe">www.hp.com/go/anticounterfe</a> Service or repairs required as a result of using non-HP supplies are not covered under HP warranty.		
. oo.p proce		To continue printing, press ✓. The first pending print job will be cancelled.		
10.XX.YY SUPPLY MEMORY ERROR	The printer cannot read or write to the print-	Open the front door.		
For help press ?	cartridge memory tag, or the memory tag is missing.	Remove the print cartridge, and then reinstall it.		
		3. Close the front door.		
		4. Turn the printer off and then on.		
		<ol><li>If the error persists, contact HP Support.</li></ol>		
11.XX INTERNAL CLOCK ERROR alternates with	The printer internal clock is not working correctly. Printing can continue, but you are prompted to set the date and time each time you turn the printer on.	Contact HP support.		
To continue press ✓	time you turn the printer on.			
13.XX.YY FUSER JAM INSIDE TOP COVER	A jam has occurred in the fuser area.	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to see step-by-step information.</li> </ol>		
alternates with  For help press ?		Open the top cover, and then remove the print cartridge.		
		3. Remove all media found.		
		Lift the metal flap, and then remove any media remaining.		
		5. Reinstall the print cartridge, and then close the top cover.		
		6. To exit, press ?.		
13.XX.YY JAM IN TRAY 1	A page is jammed in the multipurpose tray.	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to see step-by-step information.</li> </ol>		
alternates with  Clear jam then press		Remove media from tray 1, and then remove any media in the printer.		
		<ol> <li>Confirm that the media guides and dial are in the correct position and match the media that is loaded in the tray.</li> </ol>		
		Reload media in tray 1. Do not load media above the fill tabs on the media		

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
		width guides, and confirm that the guides are in the correct position.
		<ol> <li>To continue printing, press ? to clear the message, and then press ✓.</li> </ol>
13.XX.YY JAM IN TRAY 2	A page is jammed in tray 2.	Remove tray 2, clear the jam, and then reinstall tray 2.
		See Clearing jams from the input-tray areas.
		If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support.
13.XX.YY JAM IN TRAY X alternates with	A page is jammed in the tray indicated.	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to see step-by-step information.</li> </ol>
		2. Remove the tray indicated.
Clear jam then press ✓		<ol> <li>Confirm that the media guides and dial are in the correct position and match the media that is loaded in the tray.</li> </ol>
		<ol> <li>Remove all media found in the printer, and then reinstall the tray.</li> </ol>
		5. To exit, press ?.
		NOTE To avoid jams with heavier media, use tray 1 and the rear output bin.
13.XX.YY JAM INSIDE DUPLEXER	A jam has occurred inside the duplexer.	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to see step-by-step information.</li> </ol>
For help press ?		Remove the duplexer from the rear of the printer.
		<ol> <li>Look inside the printer duplex area and remove any media.</li> </ol>
		4. Remove any media from the duplexer.
		5. Reinstall the duplexer.
		6. To exit, press ?.
13.XX.YY JAM INSIDE FRONT DOOR	A jam has occurred inside the front door.	Press ? for help.
alternates with		or
For help press ?		See Clearing jams from the print-cartridge area.
		If the message persists after clearing all pages and exiting Help, contact HP Support.

Control panel message	Description	Rec	ommended action
13.XX.YY JAM INSIDE REAR DOOR	A jam has occurred in the duplex reversing area.	1.	Press ▼ to see step-by-step information.
alternates with  Clear jam then press ✓		2.	Open rear door, and then remove all media found.
		3.	Close the rear door.
		4.	To exit, press ?.
13.XX.YY JAM INSIDE REAR DOOR	A jam has occurred in the rear door area.	1.	Press ▼ to see step-by-step information.
alternates with  For help press ?		2.	Pull the duplexer half-way out of the printer.
		3.	Open the rear door, and then remove the duplexer.
		4.	Release the four tabs in the center of the black paper guide inside the lower rear door.
		5.	Lower rear door completely, and then remove all media found.
		6.	Close the rear door. The four tabs in the paper guide will automatically reattach to the door.
		7.	Reinstall the duplexer.
		8.	To exit, press ?.
13.XX.YY JAM INSIDE TOP COVER alternates with	A jam has occurred in the registration assembly area.	1.	Press the   to see step-by-step information.
Remove print cartridge		2.	Open the top cover, and then remove the print cartridge.
		3.	Remove all media found.
		4.	Lift the metal flap, and then remove any media remaining.
		5.	Verify that the media size matches the tray settings and the dial on the tray.
		6.	Reinstall the print cartridge, and then close the top cover.
		7.	To exit, press ?.
20 INSUFFICIENT MEMORY	The printer has received more data from the computer than fits in available memory.	1.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
alternates with			NOTE Data will be lost.
For help press?		•	
To continue press 🗸		2.	Reduce the complexity of the print job to avoid this error.
		3.	Adding memory to the printer may allow printing of more complex pages.

Control panel message	Description	Rec	commended action
21 PAGE TOO COMPLEX alternates with	The page-compression process is too slow for the printer. Some data may be lost on the page.	1.	Press ▼ to see step-by-step information.
	the page.	2.	To print the job with some data loss,
To continue press 🗸			press ? to exit the message, and then press $\checkmark$ . If data is lost, simplify the page content to reduce its complexity.
		3.	To exit, press ?.
22 EIO X BUFFER OVERFLOW	For printers with an EIO device only.	1.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
alternates with	The printer EIO card in slot X has overflowed its I/O buffer during a busy state.		NOTE Data will be lost.
To continue press 🗸		2.	If the message persists, contact HP Support.
22 EMBEDDED I/O BUFFER OVERFLOW	The embedded HP Jetdirect print server buffer has overflowed during a busy state.	1.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
			NOTE A loss of data will occur.
		2.	If the message persists, contact HP Support.
22 PARALLEL I/O BUFFER OVERFLOW	The printer parallel buffer has overflowed during a busy state.	1.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
alternates with			NOTE Data will be lost.
To continue press 🗸		2.	If the message persists after exiting Help, contact HP Support.
22 SERIAL I/O BUFFER OVERFLOW	The printer serial buffer has overflowed during a busy state.	1.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
alternates with			NOTE Data will be lost.
To continue press 🗸		2.	If the message persists, contact HP Support.
22 USB I/O BUFFER OVERFLOW	The printer's USB buffer has overflowed during a busy state.	1.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
alternates with	0,		NOTE Data will be lost.
To continue press 🗡		2.	If the message persists, contact HP Support.
40 BAD SERIAL TRANSMISSION	A serial data error (parity, framing, or line overrun) has occurred while the printer was	1.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
alternates with	receiving data.		NOTE Data will be lost.
To continue press 🗸		2.	If the message persists, contact HP Support.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
40 EIO X BAD TRANSMISSION	A connection with the card in the EIO slot has broken.	<ol> <li>Press      ✓ to continue printing.</li> </ol>
alternates with		NOTE Data will be lost.
To continue press 🗡		
		<ol><li>If the message persists, contact HP Support.</li></ol>
40 EMBEDDED I/0 BAD TRANSMISSION	The connection with the HP Jetdirect embedded print server has broken.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
alternates with	embedded print server has broken.	
To continue press 🗸		
41.3 UNEXPECTED SIZE IN TRAY X	Media is loaded that is longer or shorter in the feed direction than the size configured	<ol> <li>Press      ✓ to print from a different tray.</li> </ol>
alternates with	for the tray.	2. To print from the current tray, load the
LOAD TRAY X <type> <size></size></type>		tray with the size and type indicated.
		Ensure that all trays are configured correctly before printing again. See Configuring trays for more information.
41.5 UNEXPECTED TYPE IN TRAY X	The printer senses a different media type	<ol> <li>Press</li></ol>
alternates with	than what is configured in the tray.	2. To print from the current tray, load the
LOAD TRAY X <type> <size></size></type>		tray with the size and type indicated.
		Ensure that all trays are configured correctly before printing again. See Configuring trays for more information.
41.X ERROR	A printer error has occurred.	<ol> <li>Press</li></ol>
alternates with		If the message persists after exiting
To continue press 🗡		help, turn the printer off and then on.
		<ol> <li>If the message persists, contact HP Support.</li> </ol>
49.XXXXX ERROR	A critical firmware error has occurred.	Turn the printer off and then on.
alternates with		2. If the message persists, contact
To continue turn off then on		HP Support.
50.X FUSER ERROR	A fuser error has occurred.	1. Turn the printer off.
For help press ?		<ol><li>Verify the fuser is installed correctly and fully seated.</li></ol>
		3. Turn on the printer.
		If the message persists, contact HP Support.
51.XY ERROR	A printer error has occurred.	<ol> <li>Press   ✓ to continue.</li> </ol>
alternates with		If the message persists, turn the printer off and then on.
To continue turn off then on		If the message persists, contact     HP Support.

Control panel message	Description	Re	commen	ded action
52.XY ERROR	A printer error has occurred.	1.	Press	to continue.
alternates with		2.		nessage persists, turn the off and then on.
To continue turn off then on			printer	on and men on.
		3.	If the m HP Sup	essage persists, contact poort.
53.10.01 ERROR UNSUPPORTED RAM	The memory DIMM is not a supported DIMM.		tall a supp	ported DIMM. See <u>Installing</u> ory.
54.XX ERROR	A printer command error has occurred.	1.	Turn th	e printer off and then on.
		2.	If the m HP sup	essage persists, contact port.
55.XX.YY DC CONTROLLER ERROR	The engine is not communicating with the formatter.	1.	Turn th	e printer off and then on.
alternates with	iornatter.	2.	If the m	essage persists, contact HP
To continue turn off then on			Suppor	t.
56.XX ERROR	An error has occurred.	1.	Turn th	e printer off and then on.
alternates with		2.	If the m	essage persists, contact HP
To continue turn off then on			Suppor	t.
57.XX PRINTER ERROR	A printer fan error has occurred.	1.	Turn th	e printer off and then on.
alternates with		2.		essage persists, contact
To continue turn off then on			HP Sup	ороп.
58.XX ERROR	An error has occurred in which a memory tag CPU was detected.	1.	Press `informa	to view step-by-step
alternates with	tag of o was detected.			
To continue turn off then on		2.	Turn th	e printer off and then on.
		3.	If the m Suppor	essage persists, contact HP t.
		4.	To exit,	press ?.
59.XY ERROR	A printer motor error has occurred.	1.	Turn the	e printer off and then on.
alternates with		2.	If the m	nessage persists, contact poort.
To continue turn off then on			3333	NOTE This message might also appear if the transfer unit is missing or incorrectly installed. Ensure that the transfer unit is correctly installed.
62 NO SYSTEM	No system was found.	1.	Turn th	e printer off and then on.
		2.	If the m	nessage persists, contact oport.
64 ERROR	A scan buffer error has occurred.	1.	Turn th	e printer off and then on.
		2.	If the m	essage persists, contact

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
For help press ?		
alternates with		
To continue turn off then on		
68.X PERMANENT STORAGE FULL	A non-volatile storage device is full. Press  ✓ to clear the message. Printing can	1. Press ✓ to continue.
To continue press 🗸	continue, but unexpected behavior could result.	2. For 68.0 errors, turn the printer off and then on.
, o commune <b>p</b> . coc	X Description	<ol> <li>If a 68.0 error persists, contact HP Support.</li> </ol>
	Onboard NVRAM     Removable disk (flash or hard)	<ol> <li>For 68.1 errors, use the HP Web Jetadmin software to delete files from the disk drive.</li> </ol>
		5. For 68.1 errors that persist, contact HP Support.
68.X PERMANENT STORAGE WRITE FAIL	A non-volatile storage device is full. Press  ✓ to clear the message. Printing can	<ol> <li>Press  ✓ to continue.</li> </ol>
alternates with	continue, but unexpected behavior could result.	<ol><li>If the problem persists, contact HP Support.</li></ol>
To continue press 🗸	X Description	
	0 Onboard NVRAM	
	1 Removable disk	
68.X STORAGE ERROR SETTINGS CHANGED	A non-volatile storage device is full. Press  ✓ to clear the message. Printing can continue, but unexpected behavior could	<ol> <li>Press ▼ to view step-by-step information.</li> </ol>
alternates with	result.	2. To clear the error, press ? to exit the
To continue press 🗸	X Description	message, and then press $\checkmark$ to continue.
	Onboard NVRAM     Removable disk	3. If the problem persists, turn the printer off and then on.
		If the message persists, contact HP Support.
		5. To exit, press ?.
79.XXXX ERROR	A critical hardware error has occurred.	Turn the printer off and then on.
alternates with		If the problem persists, contact     HP Support.
To continue turn off then on		τιι συρροιτ.
8X.YYYY EIO ERROR	The EIO accessory card has encountered a critical error.	Turn the printer off and then on.
		<ol><li>If the problem persists, contact HP Support.</li></ol>
8X.YYYY EMBEDDED JETDIRECT ERROR	The HP Jetdirect embedded print server has encountered a critical error.	Turn the printer off and then on.
	ndo chodulitored a critical citor.	<ol><li>If the problem persists, contact HP Support.</li></ol>

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action	
<date> <time></time></date>	The printer has an internal clock that tracks the date and time. You are prompted to set	Press ✓ to change the date and time.	
To change press ✓	the correct date and time the first time you turn on the printer.	Press Stop to skip this step. You can set the date and time later by using the	
To skip, press STOP		SYSTEM SETUP menu.	
		If the prompt appears each time you turn on the printer, the clock is not working correctly. Contact HP support.	
Access Denied MENUS LOCKED	The printer administrator has enabled the control-panel security mechanism. You cannot modify control-panel settings in this circumstance. The message disappears after a few seconds, and the printer returns to <b>Ready</b> or <b>BUSY</b> state.	Contact the printer administrator to change settings.	
ACTION NOT CURRENTLY AVAILABLE ON TRAY X	You are trying to set duplex registration for a tray that is configured for <b>ANY SIZE</b> or <b>ANY CUSTOM</b> . Duplex registration is not	Change the size setting for the tray.	
alternates with	available when the tray size is set to either		
Tray size cannot be ANY SIZE/ANY CUSTOM	of these settings.		
BAD DUPLEXER CONNECTION	The duplexer is not installed correctly.	Turn the printer off and then on to continue.	
alternates with			
To continue turn off then on			
Calibrating	The printer is calibrating.	No action necessary.	
Canceling <job name=""></job>	The printer is in the process of canceling a job. The message appears while the job is stopped, the paper path is flushed, and any remaining incoming data on the active data channel is received and discarded.	No action necessary.	
Checking paper path	The engine is turning the rollers to check for possible jams.	No action necessary.	
Checking printer	The engine is performing an internal test.	No action necessary.	
CHOSEN PERSONALITY NOT	The printer encountered a request for a	<ol> <li>Press   ✓ to continue.</li> </ol>	
AVAILABLE alternates with	personality that did not exist in the printer. The job is cancelled and no pages are printed.	2. Try a different driver.	
To continue press ✓	,		
CLEANING DISK X% COMPLETE	The memory disk is being cleaned. This	Do not turn off the printer. Wait for the	
alternates with	process might take up to an hour. During this time, no jobs can be printed.	process to complete.	
DO NOT POWER OFF	., ., <del> p</del>	The printer automatically restarts at the end of the cleaning process.	
Cleaning	The printer is processing the cleaning page.	No action necessary.	
Clearing event log	This message appears while the event log is cleared. The printer then returns to the <b>SERVICE</b> menu.	No action necessary.	

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action	
Clearing paper path	The printer jammed or detected misplaced media. The printer is attempting to eject these pages automatically.	No action necessary.	
CLOSE TOP COVER AND FRONT DOOR	The top cover and front door need to be closed.	Close the top cover and front door.	
CODE CRC ERROR	An error has occurred during a firmware upgrade.	<ol> <li>Reinstall the firmware.</li> <li>If the problem persists, contact HP Support.</li> </ol>	
CreatingCLEANING PAGE	The printer is generating a cleaning page. The printer returns to the <b>Ready</b> state after the cleaning page is printed.	<ol> <li>Load the cleaning page into tray 1.</li> <li>Press Menu.</li> <li>Select PRINT QUALITY, and then press Y.</li> <li>Select PROCESS CLEANING PAGE, and then press Y.</li> </ol>	
DATA RECEIVED alternates with	The printer received data and is waiting for a form feed. When the printer receives another file, the message disappears.	If the printer is waiting for a form feed, press ✓ to continue.	
Ready	The printer is paused.	If the printer is paused, press Stop to continue.	
Event Log Empty	SHOW EVENT LOG was selected from the control panel, and the event log is empty.	No action necessary.	
Genuine HP supplies installed	A new HP cartridge has been installed. The printer returns to the <b>Ready</b> state after approximately 10 seconds.	No action necessary.	
GENUINE HP SUPPLIES DESIGNED FOR <prod> alternates with</prod>	This genuine HP supply was not designed for this printer and is not supported. The printer can print with this supply, but print quality might be affected.	Replace this supply with a genuine HP supply that is designed for this printer.	
Incorrect	The PIN number is incorrect.	Contact the network administrator.	
INFLATE FAILURE	An error has occurred during a firmware upgrade.	Reinstall the firmware.      If the problem persists, contact HP Support.	
Initializing	This message appears when the printer is turned on and begins initialization.	No action necessary.	
Initializing permanent storage	This message appears when the printer is turned on to show that permanent storage is being initialized.	No action necessary.	
INSERT OR CLOSE TRAY XX	A tray is open and the printer is trying to print from another tray.	Close the tray indicated so that printing can continue.	
INSTALL FUSER	The fuser is either not installed or not correctly installed in the printer.	Press ? for help.	
For help press ?	The state of the s	or	

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
		Contact HP Customer Support or your authorized HP service provider.
INSUFFICIENT MEMORY TO LOAD FONTS/DATA	This message alternates with the name of the storage device. The storage device does not have enough memory to load the	Press ✓ to continue printing without using the data.
	fonts or other data.	To solve the problem, increase the amount of memory for the device. Press ? for more information.
LOAD TRAY X <type> <size></size></type>	Tray X is either empty or configured for a type and size other than that specified in	Press ? for help.
alternates with	the job. No other tray is available.	or
For help press ?		See Configuring trays for more information.
LOAD TRAY X <type> <size></size></type>	Tray X is either empty or configured for a type and size other than that specified in	Press ? for help.
alternates with	the job.	or
To use another tray press ✓		Press ✓ to print from another tray. See Configuring trays for more information.
Loading program X	Programs and fonts can be stored on the	No action necessary.
alternates with	printer file system and are loaded into RAM when the printer is turned on. The number	
DO NOT POWER OFF	X specifies a sequence number indicating the current program being loaded.	
MANUALLY FEED <type> <size></size></type>	Tray 1 is empty and no other tray is available.	Load media into tray 1, and press ✓ to continue.
alternates with		Press ? for help.
For help press ?		or
		See Configuring trays for more information.
MANUALLY FEED <type> <size></size></type>	Media is in tray 1, but the print job requires	Press ✓ to print from the tray.
alternates with	a specific type and size that is not currently available.	or
To continue press 🗸		Press ? for help.
		or
		See Configuring trays for more information.
MANUALLY FEED <type> <size></size></type>	No media is in tray 1, and a print job requires a specific type and size that is	Press Y to print from another tray. See
alternates with	available in another tray.	Configuring trays for more information.
To use another tray press 🗸		or 2
		Press ? for help.
MANUALLY FEED OUTPUT STACK	The first side of a manual two-sided print job has been printed and the printer is	Take the printed stack out of the output bin and reinsert it in tray 1 to print the second
alternates with	paused until for the output stack is reinserted.	side of the two-sided print job. Press ✓ to continue. See Printing on both sides
Then press ✓ to print second sides		(duplexing) for more information.

**ENWW** 

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
MEM TEST FAILURE REPLACE DIMM 1	The memory DIMM has failed.	Install a supported memory DIMM. See Installing printer memory.
Moving solenoid	The printer is testing a solenoid.	No action necessary.
alternates with		
To exit press STOP key		
NON HP SUPPLY IN USE	The printer has detected that a non-	If you believe you purchased an HP supply, go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit">www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit</a> .
alternates with	HP supply is currently installed but ✓ was pressed to override the message.	-
Ready		Service or repairs that are required as a result of using non-HP supplies are not covered under HP warranty.
NON HP SUPPLY INSTALLED	A new, non-HP supply has been installed. This message appears until an HP supply	If you believe you purchased an HP supply, go to <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit">www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit</a> .
For help press ?	is installed or you press ✓.	Service or repairs that are required as a result of using non-HP supplies are not covered under HP warranty.
		To continue printing, press ✓.
PAPER PATH JAM FRONT DOOR	A page is jammed in the paper path.	Open the front door and remove any
alternates with		jammed media.
For help press ?		
Paused	The printer has paused.	Press Stop to resume printing.
alternates with		
To return to Ready press the STOP key		
Performing upgrade	A firmware upgrade is in process.	No action necessary. Do not turn off the printer.
Performing PAPER PATH TEST	The printer is performing a paper-path test.	No action necessary.
PRINTING STOPPED	This message appears when a Print/Stop test runs and the time expires.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
To continue press 🗸		
Printing CONFIGURATION	The printer is generating the configuration page. The printer will return to the <b>Ready</b> state when the page has printed.	No action necessary.
Printing DIAGNOSTICS PAGE	The printer is generating the diagnostics page. The printer will return to the <b>Ready</b> state when the page has printed.	No action necessary.
Printing EVENT LOG	The printer is generating the event log page. The printer will return to the <b>Ready</b> state when the page has printed.	No action necessary.
Printing FILE DIRECTORY	The printer is generating the mass storage directory page. The printer will return to the <b>Ready</b> state when the page has printed.	No action necessary.
Printing FONT LIST	The printer is generating either the PCL or PS personality typeface list. The printer will	No action necessary.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action	
	return to the <b>Ready</b> state when the page has printed.		
Printing MENU MAP	The printer is generating the printer menu map. The printer will return to the <b>Ready</b> state when the page has printed.	No action necessary.	
Printing REGISTRATION PAGE	The printer is generating the registration page. The printer will return to the <b>SET REGISTRATION</b> menu when the page has printed.	Follow the instructions on the printed pages	
Printing SUPPLIES STATUS	The printer is generating the supplies status page. The printer will return to the <b>Ready</b> state when the page has printed.	No action necessary.	
Printing USAGE PAGE	The printer is generating the usage page. The printer will return to the online <b>Ready</b> state when the page has printed.	No action necessary.	
PROCESSING DUPLEX JOB alternates with	During duplex printing, the paper emerges for a short time before it is pulled back into the printer.	Do not pick up pages until they come to rest in the output bin.	
Do not grab paper until job completes			
Processing	The printer is currently processing a job but is not yet picking pages. When the media begins to move, this message is replaced by a message that indicates which tray the job is being printed from.	No action necessary.	
Processing from tray <x></x>	The printer is actively processing a job from the designated tray.	No action necessary.	
RAM DISK DEVICE FAILURE alternates with	The RAM disk has failed.	Printing can continue for jobs that do not require the RAM disk.	
Ready		<ol><li>To remove this message from the display, press </li></ol>	
To clear press 🗸			
RAM DISK FILE OPERATION FAILED	The printer received a PJL file system command that attempted to perform an	<ol> <li>Printing can continue.</li> <li>To remove this message from the</li> </ol>	
alternates with	illogical operation (for example, to download a file to a non-existent directory).	display, press $\checkmark$ .	
Ready To clear press 🏏		If the message reappears, there might be a problem with the software program.	
RAM DISK FILE SYSTEM IS FULL	The printer received a PJL file system command to store something on the file	Use HP Web Jetadmin software to delete files from the RAM disk	
alternates with	system, but the file system is full.	memory and try again.	
Ready		<ol><li>To remove this message from the display, press </li></ol>	
To clear press 🗸		See HP Web Jetadmin for more information.	

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action	
RAM DISK IS WRITE PROTECTED alternates with	The file system is protected and no new files can be written to it.	To enable writing to the RAM disk memory, use HP Web Jetadmin to turn off write protection.	
Ready		<ol> <li>To remove this message from the display, press ✓.</li> </ol>	
To clear press 🗸		See <u>HP Web Jetadmin</u> for more information.	
RAM DISK X Initializing alternates with	The new RAM disk installed in slot X is initializing.	No action necessary.	
DO NOT POWER OFF			
Receiving upgrade	A firmware upgrade is in progress.	Do not turn the printer off until the printer returns to <b>Ready</b> .	
Request accepted please wait	The printer has accepted a request to print an internal page, but the current job must finish printing before the internal page will print.	No action necessary.	
Resend upgrade	The firmware upgrade was not successful.	Attempt the upgrade again.	
Restoring factory settings	The printer is restoring factory settings.	No action necessary.	
Restoring	The printer is restoring settings.	No action necessary.	
RFU LOAD ERROR	An error has occurred during a firmware upgrade.	Reinstall the firmware.      If the problem persists, contact	
Rotating motor	The printer is testing a motor.	HP Support.  Press Stop to stop this test.	
alternates with			
To exit press STOP key			
SANITIZING DISK X% COMPLETE	The memory disk is being sanitized. This process might take up to an hour. During	Do not turn off the printer. Wait for the process to complete.	
alternates with	this time, no jobs can be printed.	The printer automatically restarts at the end	
DO NOT POWER OFF		of the sanitation process.	
Setting saved	A menu selection has been saved.	No action necessary.	
SIZE MISMATCH IN TRAY XX	The tray is loaded with a media size that is different than the size for which the tray is	<ol> <li>Make sure the media guides are adjusted correctly.</li> </ol>	
alternates with	configured. Printing can continue from other trays, but not from this one.	2. In the PAPER HANDLING menu,	
Ready	, . ,	configure the tray for the correct size.	
Sleep mode on	The printer is in the sleep mode. Any button press or the receipt of data clears sleep mode.	No action necessary. The printer automatically exits sleep mode.	
STANDARD TOP BIN FULL	The output bin is full. Printing cannot	Empty the output bin. Printing resumes	
alternates with	continue.	automatically.	
Remove all paper from bin			
Tray X <type> <size></size></type>	The printer is reporting the current configuration of tray X.	No action necessary.	

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action	
alternates with		Press <sup>♠</sup> to clear the message.	
To change size or type press ✓		Press ✓ to change the type or size.	
		See Configuring trays for more information.	
TRAY XX EMPTY <type> <size></size></type>	The tray is empty, but the current print job	Fill the tray. The message indicates the	
alternates with	does not require this tray.	type and size of media for which the tray is currently configured.	
Ready			
TRAY XX OPEN	The tray is open, but printing can continue.	Close the tray.	
For help press ?			
alternates with			
Ready			
TRAY XX OPEN OR EMPTY	The tray is open or empty, but the current	Close or fill the tray.	
alternates with	print job does not require this tray.		
Ready			
TYPE MISMATCH IN TRAY XX	The tray is loaded with a media type that is	In the PAPER HANDLING menu, configure	
alternates with	different than the type for which the tray is configured. Printing can continue from other	the tray for the correct type.	
Ready	trays, but not from this one.		
Unauthorized supply in use	The printer has detected that a non-	If you believe you purchased an HP supply,	
alternates with	HP supply is currently installed and ✓ (override) was pressed.	go to www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit.	
Ready		Service or repairs required as a result of using non-HP supplies are not covered under HP warranty.	
USB ACCESSORY ERROR	The printer has detected too much current on the USB storage accessory.	Turn the printer off.	
		2. Remove the USB storage accessory.	
		3. Replace the USB storage accessory.	
		4. Turn the printer on.	
USB Storage <x> initializing</x>	The USB storage device is initializing.	No action necessary.	
USB Storage <x> not functional</x>	The USB storage device is not working.	Replace the USB storage device.	
USB STORAGE DEVICE FAILURE	The USB storage device has failed.	Printing can continue for jobs that do not require the storage device.	
alternates with		2. To remove this message from the	
Ready		display, press ✓.	
To clear press 🗸		<ol> <li>If the message persists, turn the printer off, remove and re-install the storage device, and then turn the printer on.</li> </ol>	
		If the message persists, replace the storage device.	

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
USB STORAGE FILE OPERATION FAILED	The printer received a PJL file system	Printing can continue.
alternates with	command that attempted to perform an illogical operation (for example, to download a file to a nonexistent directory).	<ol> <li>To remove this message from the display, press    ✓.</li> </ol>
Ready		If the message reappears, a problem
To clear press 🗸		might exist in the software program.
USB STORAGE FILE SYSTEM IS FULL	The printer received a PJL file system command that attempted to store	Use HP Web Jetadmin software to delete files from the storage device,
alternates with	something on the file system but was unsuccessful because the file system is full.	and then try again.
Ready	unsuccessful because the life system is full.	<ol><li>To remove this message from the display, press ✓.</li></ol>
To clear press 🗸		See <u>HP Web Jetadmin</u> for more information
USB STORAGE IS WRITE PROTECTED	The file system is protected and no new files can be written to it.	To enable writing to the storage device, use HP Web Jetadmin to turn
alternates with		off write protection.
Ready		To remove this message from the display, turn the printer off and then or
To clear press 🗸		See <u>HP Web Jetadmin</u> for more information
USB STORAGE X REMOVED	The USB storage accessory was removed	Turn the printer off.
	while the printer was turned on.	To continue using the USB storage accessory, reinstall it.
		3. Turn the printer on.
USE TRAY X <type> <size>trays</size></type>	The printer is offering a selection of alternate media to use for the print job.	<ol> <li>Use ▲ and ▼ to highlight a different size or type, and then press</li> <li>✓ to select the size or type.</li> </ol>
		<ol> <li>Press <sup>♠</sup> to return to the previous size or type.</li> </ol>
		See Configuring trays for more information.

# **Guidelines for using paper**

For best results, make sure the paper is of good quality, and free of cuts, nicks, tears, spots, loose particles, dust, wrinkles, voids, and curled or bent edges.

If you are unsure what type of paper you are loading (such as bond or recycled), check the label on the package of paper.

For a complete list of supported media, see Supported media sizes.

The following problems with paper cause print quality deviations, jamming, or even damage to the printer.

Symptom	Problem with paper	Solution
Poor print quality or toner adhesion	The paper is too moist, too rough, too heavy, too smooth, or it is embossed or from a faulty paper lot.	Try another kind of paper, between 100 and 250 Sheffield, and with 4 to 6% moisture content.
Dropouts, jamming, curl	The paper has been stored incorrectly.	Store paper flat in its moisture-proof wrapping.
	The paper varies from side to side.	Turn the paper over.
Excessive curl	The paper is too moist, has the wrong grain direction, or is of short-grain construction.	Open the rear output bin, or use long-grain paper.
	The paper varies from side to side.	Turn the paper over.
Jamming, damage to printer	The paper has cutouts or perforations.	Use paper that is free of cutouts or perforations.
Problems with feeding	The paper has ragged edges, or it is from a faulty paper lot.	Use high-quality paper that is made for laser printers.
	The paper varies from side to side.	Turn the paper over.
	The paper is too moist, too rough, too heavy, or too smooth.	Try another kind of paper, between 100 and 250 Sheffield, and with 4 to 6% moisture content.
	It has the wrong grain direction, is of short-grain construction, or it is embossed.	Open the rear output bin, or use long- grain paper.



**NOTE** Do not use letterhead paper that is printed with low-temperature inks, such as those used in some types of thermography. Do not use raised or embossed letterhead. The printer uses heat and pressure to fuse toner to the paper. Make sure that any colored paper or preprinted forms use inks that are compatible with this fusing temperature (200°C or 392°F for 0.1 second).



**CAUTION** Failure to follow these guidelines could cause jams or damage to the printer.

# **Printing special pages**

Special pages within the memory of the printer can help you to diagnose and learn about problems with your printer.

### Configuration page

The configuration page lists many of the current settings and properties of the printer. For information about how to print the configuration page, see <u>Using printer information pages</u>. If you have an HP Jetdirect print server installed, a second page prints that lists all of the HP Jetdirect information.

### Font list

You can print a font list using the control panel (see <u>Using printer information pages</u>) or, for Macintosh computers, the HP Printer Utility (see <u>Using the HP Printer Utility for Macintosh</u>).

#### Supplies status page

Use the supplies status page to obtain information about the print cartridge that is installed in the printer, the amount of life that remains in the print cartridge, and the number of pages and jobs that have been processed (see <u>Using printer information pages</u>).

#### Show Me How pages

Use the **SHOW ME HOW** control-panel menu to print pages that contain information about jams, loading trays, supported media types and sizes, and more help. See <u>Show Me How menu</u>.

# **Common causes of jams**

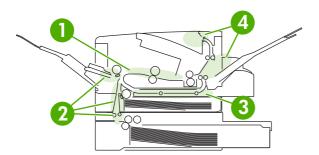
The printer is jammed.1

Cause	Solution
The media does not meet specifications.	Use only media that meets HP specifications. See Paper specifications.
A component is installed incorrectly.	Verify that all print cartridges, the transfer unit, and the fuser are correctly installed.
You are using media that has already passed through a printer or copier.	Do not use media that has been previously printed on or copied.
An input tray is loaded incorrectly.	Remove any excess media from the input tray. Make sure that the stack is below the maximum stack height mark in the tray. See <u>Configuring trays</u> .
The media is skewed.	The input-tray guides are not adjusted correctly. Adjust them so they hold the stack firmly in place without bending it.
The media is binding or sticking together.	Remove the media, flex it, rotate it 180°, or flip it over. Reload the media into the input tray.
	NOTE Do not fan paper. Fanning can create static electricity, which can cause paper to stick together.
The media is removed before it settles into the output bin.	Reset the printer. Wait until the page completely settles in the output bin before removing it.
During two-sided printing, you removed the paper before the second side of the document was printed.	Reset the printer and print the document again. Wait until the page completely settles in the output bin before removing it.
The media is in poor condition.	Replace the media.
The internal rollers from tray 2 or tray 3 are not picking up the media.	Remove the top sheet of media. If the media is heavier than 163 g/m² (43 lb), it might not be picked from the tray.
The media has rough or jagged edges.	Replace the media.
The media is perforated or embossed.	Perforated or embossed media does not separate easily. Feed single sheets from tray 1.
Printer supply items have reached the end of their useful life.	Check the printer control panel for messages prompting you to replace supplies, or print a supplies status page to verify the remaining life of the supplies. See <a href="Using printer">Using printer</a> information pages.
Paper was not stored correctly.	Replace the paper in the trays. Paper should be stored in the original packaging in a controlled environment.

If the printer still continues to jam, contact HP Customer Support or your authorized HP service provider.

# Jam locations

Use this illustration to troubleshoot jams in the printer. For instructions about clearing jams, see <u>Clearing jams</u>.



1	Print cartridge
2	Input trays
3	Duplex path (for two-sided printing)
4	Output bins

## Jam recovery

This printer automatically provides jam recovery, a feature that you can use to set whether the printer should attempt to automatically reprint jammed pages.

- AUTO instructs the printer to attempt to reprint jammed pages.
- OFF instructs the printer not to attempt to reprint jammed pages.



**NOTE** During the recovery process, the printer might reprint pages that were printed before the jam occurred. Be sure to remove any duplicated pages.

To improve print speed and increase memory resources, you might want to disable the jam recovery.

### To turn off jam recovery

- 1. Press Menu.
- 2. Press ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Press ▼ to highlight SYSTEM SETUP, and then press ✓.
- Press ▼ to highlight JAM RECOVERY, and then press ✓.
- 5. Press  $\nabla$  to highlight **OFF**, and then press  $\checkmark$ .
- Press Menu to return to the Ready state.

# **Clearing jams**

When clearing jams, be very careful not to tear the media. If a small piece of media remains in the printer, it could cause additional jams.

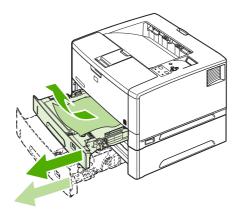
The **SHOW ME HOW** control-panel menu includes a page that shows how to clear jams. See <a href="Show Me How menu">Show Me How menu</a>.

## Clearing jams from the input-tray areas

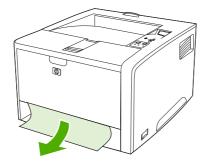


**NOTE** To remove media from the tray 1 area, slowly pull the media out of the printer. For all other trays, complete the following procedure.

1. Slide the tray out of the printer, and remove any damaged paper from the tray.



2. If the edge of the paper is visible in the feed area, slowly pull the paper down and out of the printer. If the paper is not visible, look in the top cover area.

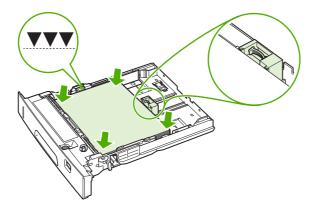




**NOTE** Do not force the paper if it will not move easily. If the paper is stuck in a tray, try removing it through the tray above (if applicable) or through the top-cover area.

ENWW Clearing jams 145

**3.** Before replacing the tray, make sure the paper is flat in the tray at all four corners and below the tabs on the guides.

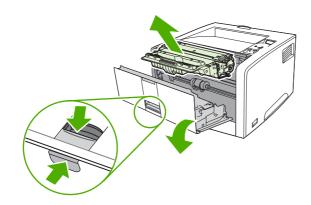


4. Open and close the top cover to clear the jam message.

If a jam message persists, there is still media in the printer. Look for media in other locations.

# Clearing jams from the print-cartridge area

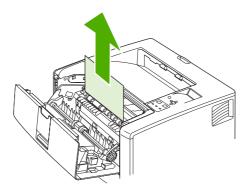
1. Open the top cover and remove the print cartridge.



Λ

**CAUTION** To prevent damage to the print cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes.

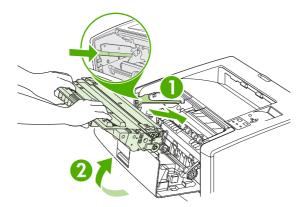
2. Slowly pull the media out of the printer. Be careful to not tear the media.





**CAUTION** Avoid spilling loose toner. Use a dry, lint-free cloth, to clean any toner that might have fallen into the printer. If loose toner falls into the printer, it might cause temporary problems with print quality. Loose toner should clear from the paper path after a few pages are printed. If toner gets on your clothing, wipe it off with a dry cloth and wash clothing in cold water. (Hot water sets toner into fabric.)

3. Replace the print cartridge, and then close the top cover.



If a jam message persists, there is still media in the printer. Look for media in other locations.

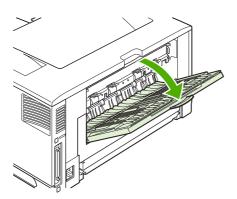
ENWW Clearing jams 147

# Clearing jams from the output-bin areas

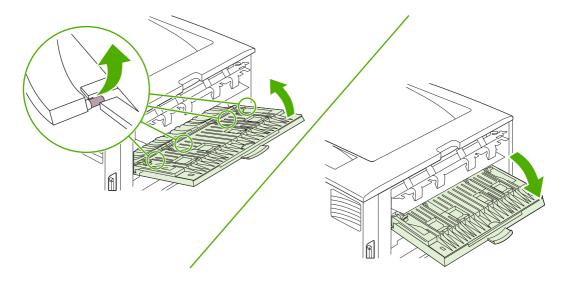


**NOTE** If media is jammed in the top output area, but most of the media is still inside the printer, it is best to remove it through the rear door.

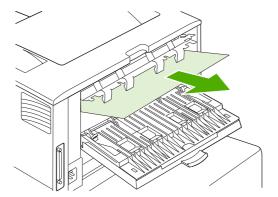
1. Open the rear door.



2. Slightly lift up the rear door, and then, on the inside of the door, lift up on the middle portion of the black assembly to release the clips. Let the rear door drop completely open.



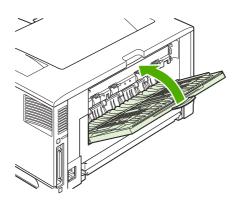
3. Grasp both sides of the media, and slowly pull the media out of the printer. (There might be loose toner on the media. Be careful not to spill it on yourself or into the printer.)





**NOTE** If media is difficult to remove, try opening the top cover and removing the print cartridge to release pressure on the media.

**4.** Close the rear door. (The clips automatically return to their original positions when the rear door is closed.)



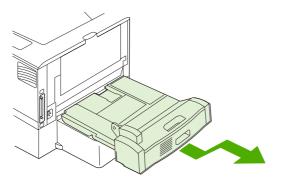
5. Open and close the top cover to clear the jam message.

If a jam message persists, there is still media in the printer. Look for media in other locations.

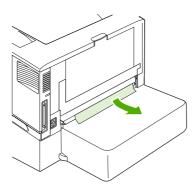
ENWW Clearing jams 149

# Clearing jams from the optional duplexer

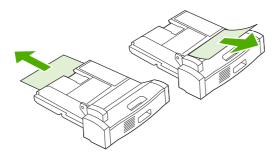
1. Remove the duplexer from the rear of the printer.



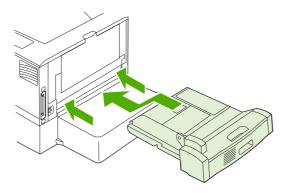
2. Look inside the printer duplex area and remove any media.



3. Remove any media from the duplexer.



#### 4. Reinstall the duplexer.





**NOTE** To prevent further jams, make sure all tray covers are in place.

# Solving repeated jams

If jams occur frequently, try the following actions:

- Check all the jam locations. A piece of media might be stuck somewhere in the printer.
- Check that media is correctly loaded in the trays, that the trays are correctly adjusted for the loaded media size, and that the trays are not overfilled.
- Check that all trays and paper-handling accessories are completely inserted into the printer. (If a tray is open during a print job, a jam might occur.)
- Check that all covers and doors are closed. (If a cover or door is open during a print job, a jam might occur.)
- Try printing to a different output bin.
- The sheets might be sticking together. Try bending the stack to separate each sheet. Do not fan the stack.
- If you are printing from tray 1, try feeding fewer sheets of media at a time.
- If you are printing small sizes (such as index cards), make sure that the media is oriented correctly in the tray.
- Turn over the media stack in the tray. Also, try rotating the stack 180°.
- Try rotating media to feed through the printer from a different orientation.
- Check the media quality. Do not use damaged or irregular media.
- Use only media that meets HP specifications. See <u>Paper specifications</u>.
- Do not use media that has already been used in a printer or copier. Do not print on both sides of envelopes, transparencies, vellum, or labels.
- Do not use media with staples or media that has had the staple removed. Staples can damage the printer and can void warranty.

ENWW Clearing jams 151

- Make sure that the power supplied to the printer is steady and meets printer specifications. See <a href="Specifications">Specifications</a>.
- Clean the printer. See <u>Cleaning the printer</u>.
- Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider to perform routine printer maintenance. See the support flyer that was included with the printer, or see <a href="HP Customer Care">HP Customer Care</a>.

# **Troubleshooting print-quality problems**

This section helps you define print-quality problems and what to do to correct them. Often print-quality problems can be handled easily by making sure that the printer is correctly maintained, using print media that meets HP specifications, or running a cleaning page.

## Print-quality problems associated with media

Some print-quality problems arise from the use of inappropriate media.

- Use media that meets HP specifications. See <u>Paper specifications</u>.
- The surface of the media is too smooth. Use media that meets HP specifications. See <u>Paper</u> specifications.
- The moisture content is uneven, too high, or too low. Use media from a different source or from an unopened ream.
- Some areas of the media reject toner. Use media from a different source or from an unopened ream.
- The letterhead you are using is printed on rough media. Use a smoother, xerographic media. If this solves your problem, ask the supplier of your letterhead to use media that meets the specifications for this printer. See <u>Paper specifications</u>.
- The media is excessively rough. Use a smoother, xerographic media.
- The driver setting is incorrect. To change the media type setting, see <u>Type and Size</u>.
- The media that you are using is too heavy for the media type setting that you selected, and the toner is not fusing to the media.

# Print-quality problems associated with the environment

If the printer is operating in excessively humid or dry conditions, verify that the printing environment is within specifications. See the printer getting started guide for operating-environment specifications.

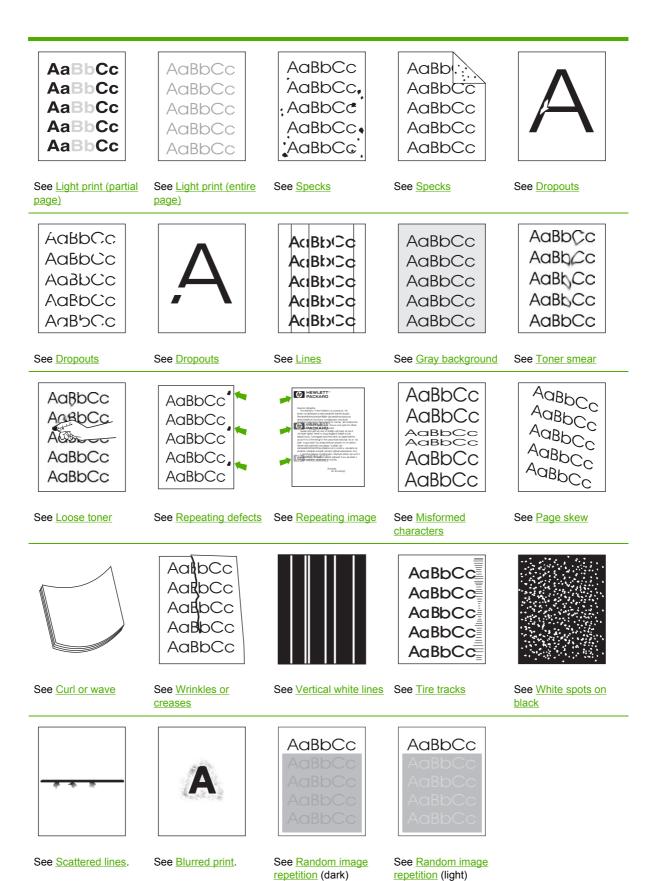
# Print-quality problems associated with jams

Make sure that all sheets are cleared from the paper path. See <u>Jam recovery</u>.

- If the printer recently jammed, print two to three pages to clean the printer.
- If the sheets do not pass through the fuser and cause image defects on subsequent documents, print three pages to clean the printer. If the problem persists, print and process a cleaning page. See Cleaning the printer.

# Image defect examples

Use the examples in this image-defect table to determine which print-quality problem you are experiencing, and then see the corresponding reference pages to troubleshoot. These examples identify the most common print-quality problems. If you still have problems after trying the suggested remedies, contact HP Customer Support. (See HP Customer Care.)





**NOTE** These examples depict letter-size media that has passed through the printer short-edge-first.

# **Light print (partial page)**



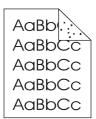
- Make sure that the print cartridge is fully installed.
- 2. The toner level in the print cartridge might be low. Replace the print cartridge.
- **3.** The media might not meet HP specifications (for example, the media is too moist or too rough). See <a href="Paper specifications">Paper specifications</a>.

## **Light print (entire page)**



- 1. Make sure that the print cartridge is fully installed.
- Make sure that the ECONOMODE setting is turned off at the control panel and in the printer driver.
- 3. Open the **CONFIGURE DEVICE** menu at the printer control panel. Open the **PRINT QUALITY** submenu and increase the **TONER DENSITY** setting. See <a href="Print Quality submenu">Print Quality submenu</a>.
- 4. Try using a different type of media.
- The print cartridge might be almost empty. Replace the print cartridge.

# **Specks**



Specks might appear on a page after a jam has been cleared.

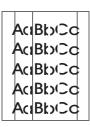
- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- Clean the inside of the printer and run a cleaning page to clean the fuser. (See <u>Cleaning the printer</u>.)
- 3. Try using a different type of media.
- 4. Check the print cartridge for leaks. If the print cartridge is leaking, replace it.

## **Dropouts**



- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)
- 2. If the media is rough, and the toner easily rubs off, open the **CONFIGURE DEVICE** menu at the printer control panel. Open the **PRINT QUALITY** submenu, select **FUSER MODES**, and then select the media type you are using. Change the setting to **HIGH1** or **HIGH2**, which helps the toner fuse more completely onto the media. (See <u>Print Quality submenu</u>.)
- 3. Try using a smoother media.

#### Lines



- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- 2. Clean the inside of the printer and run a cleaning page to clean the fuser. (See <u>Cleaning the printer</u>.)
- 3. Replace the print cartridge.

## **Gray background**



- 1. Do not use media that has already been run through the printer.
- 2. Try using a different type of media.
- 3. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- 4. Turn over the stack in the tray. Also, try rotating the stack 180°.
- Open the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu at the printer control panel. On the PRINT QUALITY submenu, increase the TONER DENSITY setting. See <u>Print Quality submenu</u>.
- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)
- 7. Replace the print cartridge.

### **Toner smear**

AaBbCc AaBbCc AaBbCc AaBbCc

- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- 2. Try using a different type of media.
- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)
- **4.** Clean the inside of the printer and run a cleaning page to clean the fuser. (See <u>Cleaning the printer</u>.)
- Replace the print cartridge.

Also see Loose toner.

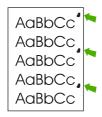
### Loose toner



Loose toner, in this context, is defined as toner that can be rubbed off the page.

- If media is heavy or rough, open the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu at the printer control panel.
  On the PRINT QUALITY submenu, select FUSER MODES, and then select the media type you
  are using. Change the setting to HIGH1 or HIGH2, which helps the toner fuse more completely
  onto the media. (See Print Quality submenu.) You must also set the type of media for the tray
  you are using. (See Controlling print jobs.)
- If you have observed a rougher texture on one side of your media, try printing on the smoother side.
- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)
- **4.** Make sure that type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See <a href="Paper specifications">Paper specifications</a>.)

# Repeating defects



- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- 2. If the distance between defects is 44 mm (1.7 in), 58 mm (2.3 in), or 94 mm (3.7 in), the print cartridge might need to be replaced.
- Clean the inside of the printer and run a cleaning page to clean the fuser. (See <u>Cleaning the printer</u>.)

Also see Repeating image.

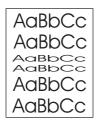
## Repeating image



This type of defect might occur when using preprinted forms or a large quantity of narrow media.

- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- Make sure that type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See <u>Paper specifications</u>.)
- 3. If the distance between defects is 44 mm (1.7 in), 58 mm (2.3 in), or 94 mm (3.7 in), the print cartridge might need to be replaced.

### Misformed characters



- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)

# Page skew



- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- 2. Verify that no torn pieces of media are inside the printer.
- 3. Make sure that media is loaded correctly and that all adjustments have been made. (See <a href="Configuring trays">Configuring trays</a>.) Make sure that the guides in the tray are not too tight or too loose against the media.

- 4. Turn over the stack in the tray. Also, try rotating the stack 180°.
- **5.** Make sure that the type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See <u>Paper specifications</u>.)
- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)

### **Curl or wave**



- 1. Turn over the stack in the tray. Also, try rotating the stack 180°.
- 2. Make sure that the type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See <a href="Paper specifications">Paper specifications</a>.)
- 3. Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <a href="Operating environment">Operating environment</a>.)
- 4. Try printing to a different output bin.
- 5. If media is lightweight and smooth, open the **CONFIGURE DEVICE** menu at the printer control panel. On the **PRINT QUALITY** submenu, select **FUSER MODES**, and then select the media type you are using. Change the setting to **LOW**, which helps reduce the heat in the fusing process. (See <a href="Print Quality submenu">Print Quality submenu</a>.) You must also set the type of media for the tray you are using. (See <a href="Controlling print jobs">Controlling print jobs</a>.)

#### Wrinkles or creases



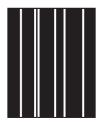
- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)
- 3. Turn over the stack in the tray. Also, try rotating the stack 180°.
- Make sure that media is loaded correctly and all adjustments have been made. (See Configuring trays.)

- Make sure that the type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See <u>Paper specifications</u>.)
- 6. If envelopes are creasing, try storing envelopes so that they lie flat.

If the above actions do not improve wrinkles or creases, change your fuser mode from **NORMAL** to **LOW1**.

- 1. On the control panel, press Menu.
- 2. Use ▼ to highlight CONFIGURE DEVICE, and then press ✓.
- 3. Use ▼ to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**, and then press ✓.
- 4. Use ▼ to highlight **FUSER MODES**, and then press ✓.
- Use ▼ to highlight LOW1, and then press ✓.

## **Vertical white lines**



- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- Make sure that the type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See <u>Paper specifications</u>.)
- 3. Replace the print cartridge.

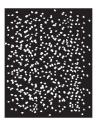
## Tire tracks



This defect typically occurs when the print cartridge has far exceeded its rated life. For example, if you are printing a very large quantity of pages with very little toner coverage.

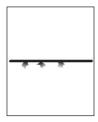
- Replace the print cartridge.
- 2. Reduce the number of pages that you print with very low toner coverage.

## White spots on black



- 1. Print a few more pages to see if the problem corrects itself.
- 2. Make sure that the type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See <u>Paper specifications</u>.)
- **3.** Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <a href="Operating environment">Operating environment</a>.)
- 4. Replace the print cartridge.

## **Scattered lines**



- **1.** Make sure that the type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See <u>Paper specifications</u>.)
- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)
- 3. Turn over the stack in the tray. Also, try rotating the stack 180°.
- 4. Open the **CONFIGURE DEVICE** menu at the printer control panel. Open the **PRINT QUALITY** submenu and change the **TONER DENSITY** setting. (See <a href="Print Quality submenu">Print Quality submenu</a>.)
- Open the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu at the printer control panel. On the PRINT QUALITY submenu, open OPTIMIZE and set LINE DETAIL=ON.

# **Blurred print**



- 1. Make sure that the type and quality of the media you are using meet HP specifications. (See Paper specifications.)
- Make sure that the environmental specifications for the printer are being met. (See <u>Operating environment</u>.)
- 3. Turn over the stack in the tray. Also, try rotating the stack 180°.
- 4. Do not use media that already has been run through the printer.
- Decrease the toner density. Open the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu at the printer control panel.
   Open the PRINT QUALITY submenu and change the TONER DENSITY setting. (See Print Quality submenu.)
- 6. Open the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu at the printer control panel. On the PRINT QUALITY submenu, open OPTIMIZE and set HIGH TRANSFER=ON. (See <a href="Print Quality submenu">Print Quality submenu</a>.)

# Random image repetition





If an image that appears at the top of the page (in solid black) repeats further down the page (in a gray field), the toner might not have been completely erased from the last job. (The repeated image might be lighter or darker than the field it appears in.)

- Change the tone (darkness) of the field that the repeated image appears in.
- Change the order in which the images are printed. For example, have the lighter image at the top of the page, and the darker image farther down the page.

- From your software program, rotate the whole page 180° to print the lighter image first.
- If the defect occurs later in a print job, turn the printer off for 10 minutes, and then turn it on to restart the print job.

# **Troubleshooting network printing problems**



**NOTE** HP recommends that you use the printer CD to install and set up the printer on a network.

- Print a configuration page (see <u>Using printer information pages</u>). If an HP Jetdirect print server
  is installed, printing a configuration page also prints a second page that shows the network
  settings and status.
- See the HP Jetdirect Embedded Print Server Administrator's Guide on the printer CD for help and for more information about the Jetdirect configuration page. To open the guide, run the CD, click Printer Documentation, click HP Jetdirect Guide, and then click Troubleshooting the HP Jetdirect Print Server.
- Try printing the job from another computer.
- To verify that a printer works with a computer, use a parallel or USB cable to connect it directly
  to a computer. You will have to reinstall the printing software. Print a document from a program
  that has printed correctly in the past. If this works, a problem with the network might exist.
- Contact your network administrator for assistance.

# **Troubleshooting common Windows problems**

#### Error message:

"Error Writing to LPTx" in Windows 9x.

Cause	Solution
Media is not loaded.	Make sure that paper or other print media is loaded in the trays.
The cable is defective or loose.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the Ready light is on.
The printer is plugged into a power strip and is not receiving enough power.	Unplug the power cord from the power strip and plug it into another electrical outlet.
The input/output setting is incorrect.	Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers. Right- click the HP LaserJet 5200 printer driver and select Properties. Click Details and then click Port Settings. Click to clear the check mark from the Check Port State before Printing box. Click OK. Click Spool Setting and then click Print Directly to Printer. Click OK.

## Error message:

"General Protection FaultException OE"

"Spool32"

"Illegal Operation"

Cause	Solution
	Close all software programs, restart Windows, and try again.
	Select a different printer driver. If the HP LaserJet 5200 PCL 6 driver is selected, switch to a PCL 5e or PS printer driver. You can usually do this from a software program.
	Delete all temp files from the Temp subdirectory. You can determine the name of the directory by editing the AUTOEXEC.BAT file and looking for the statement "Set Temp =". The name after this statement is the temp directory. It is usually C:\TEMP by default, but can be redefined.
	See the Microsoft Windows documentation that came with your computer for more information about Windows error messages.

# **Troubleshooting common Macintosh problems**

In addition to the problems that are listed in <u>Solving general printing problems</u>, this section lists problems that can occur when using a Mac computer.



**NOTE** Setup for USB and IP printing is performed through the Desktop Printer Utility. The printer will *not* appear in the Chooser.

#### The printer driver is not listed in Print Center.

Cause	Solution
The printer software might not have been installed or was installed incorrectly.	Make sure that the HP LaserJet 5200 PPD is in the following hard drive folder: Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources/ <lamp>.lproj, where "<lamp>" represents the two-letter language code for the language that you are using. If necessary, reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.</lamp></lamp>
The Postscript Printer Description (PPD) file is corrupt.	Delete the PPD file from the following hard drive folder: Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources/ <lang>.lproj, where "<lang>" represents the two-letter language code for the language that you are using. Reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.</lang></lang>

#### The printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name does not appear in the printer list box in the print center.

Cause	Solution
The printer might not be ready.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the ready light is on. If you are connecting through a USB or Ethernet hub, try connecting directly to the computer or use a different port.
The wrong connection type might be selected.	Make sure that USB, IP Printing, or Rendezvous is selected, depending on the type of connection that exists between the printer and the computer.
The wrong printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name is being used.	Check the printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name by printing a configuration page See <u>Using printer information pages</u> . Verify that the name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name on the configuration page matches the printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name in the Print Center.
The interface cable might be defective or of poor quality.	Replace the interface cable. Make sure to use a high-quality cable.

#### The printer driver does not automatically set up your selected printer in Print Center.

Cause	Solution
The printer might not be ready.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the ready light is on. If you are connecting through a USB or Ethernet hub, try connecting directly to the computer or use a different port.

#### The printer driver does not automatically set up your selected printer in Print Center.

Cause	Solution
The printer software might not have been installed or was installed incorrectly.	Make sure that the HP LaserJet 5200 PPD is in the following hard drive folder: Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources/ <lang>.lproj, where "<lang>" represents the two-letter language code for the language that you are using. If necessary, reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.</lang></lang>
The Postscript Printer Description (PPD) file is corrupt.	Delete the PPD file from the following hard drive folder: Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources/ <lang>.lproj, where "<lang>" represents the two-letter language code for the language that you are using. Reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.</lang></lang>
The printer might not be ready.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the ready light is on. If you are connecting through a USB or Ethernet hub, try connecting directly to the computer or use a different port.
The interface cable might be defective or of poor quality.	Replace the interface cable. Make sure to use a high-quality cable.

#### A print job was not sent to the printer that you wanted.

Cause	Solution
The print queue might be stopped.	Restart the print queue. Open <b>print monitor</b> and select <b>Start Jobs</b> .
The wrong printer name or IP address is being used. Another printer with the same or similar name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name might have received your print job.	Check the printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name by printing a configuration page See <u>Using printer information pages</u> . Verify that the name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name on the configuration page matches the printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name in the Print Center.

#### An encapsulated PostScript (EPS) file does not print with the correct fonts.

Cause	Solution	
This problem occurs with some programs.	<ul> <li>Try downloading the fonts that are contained in the EPS file to the printer before printing.</li> </ul>	
	Send the file in ASCII format instead of binary encoding.	

#### You are unable to print from a third-party USB card.

Cause	Solution
This error occurs when the software for USB printers is not installed.	When adding a third-party USB card, you might need the Apple USB Adapter Card Support software. The most current version of this software is available from the Apple Web site.

168 Chapter 7 Problem solving ENWW

When connected with a USB cable, the printer does not appear in the Macintosh Print Center after the driver is selected.

Cause	Solution	
This problem is caused by either a software or a hardware component.	Software troubleshooting	
	Check that your Macintosh supports USB.	
	<ul> <li>Verify that your Macintosh operating system is Mac OS X V10.1 or later.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Ensure that your Macintosh has the appropriate USB software from Apple.</li> </ul>	
	Hardware troubleshooting	
	Check that the printer is turned on.	
	Verify that the USB cable is connected correctly.	
	<ul> <li>Check that you are using the appropriate high-speed USB cable.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Ensure that you do not have too many USB devices drawing power from the chain. Disconnect all of the devices from the chain, and connect the cable directly to the USB port on the host computer.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Check to see if more than two nonpowered USB hubs are connected in a row on the chain. Disconnect all of the devices from the chain and connect the cable directly to the USB port on the host computer.</li> </ul>	
	NOTE The iMac keyboard is a nonpowered USB hub.	

# **Troubleshooting Linux problems**

For information about Linux problem solving, go to the HP Linux support Web site: <a href="hp.sourceforge.net/">hp.sourceforge.net/</a>.

# **Troubleshooting common PostScript problems**

The following situations are specific to the PostScript (PS) language and might occur when several printer languages are being used. Check the control-panel display for messages that might help resolve problems.



**NOTE** To receive a printed or screen message when PS errors occur, open the **Print Options** dialog box and click the selection next to the PS Errors section that you want.

### **General problems**

The job prints in Courier (the printer default typeface) instead of the typeface that you requested.

Cause	Solution
The requested typeface is not downloaded.	Download the font that you want and send the print job again. Verify the type and location of the font. Download the font to the printer if applicable. Check the software documentation for more information.

#### A legal page prints with clipped margins.

Cause	Solution	
The print job was too complex.	You might need to print your job at 600 dpi, reduce the complexity of the page, or install more memory.	

#### A PS error page prints.

Cause	Solution	
The print job might not be PS.	Make sure that the print job is a PS job. Check to see whether the software program expected a setup or PS header file to be sent to the printer.	

170 Chapter 7 Problem solving ENWW

# A Supplies and accessories

This section provides information about ordering parts, supplies, and accessories. Use only parts and accessories that are specifically designed for this printer.

- Ordering parts, accessories, and supplies
- Part numbers

ENWW 171

# Ordering parts, accessories, and supplies

Several methods are available for ordering parts, supplies, and accessories:

#### Ordering directly from HP

You can obtain the following items directly from HP:

- **Replacement parts** To order replacement parts in the U.S. see <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/hpparts/">http://www.hp.com/go/hpparts/</a>. Outside the United States, order parts by contacting your local authorized HP service center.
- Supplies and accessories To order supplies in the U.S., see <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies">http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies</a>.
   To order supplies worldwide, see <a href="http://www.hp.com/ghp/buyonline.html">http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies</a>.
   To order accessories, see <a href="http://www.hp.com/support/lj5200">www.hp.com/support/lj5200</a>.

#### Ordering through service or support providers

To order a part or accessory, contact an HP-authorized service or support provider. (See <u>HP Customer Care</u>.)

# Ordering directly through the embedded Web server (for printers that are connected to a network)

Use the following steps to order printing supplies directly through the embedded Web server. (See <u>Using the embedded Web server</u> for an explanation of this feature.)

# To order directly through the embedded Web server (for printers that are connected to a network)

- 1. In the Web browser on the computer, type the IP address for the printer. The printer status window appears.
- 2. Select the **Setting** tab at the top of the window.
- **3**. If asked to provide a password, type the password.
- 4. On the left side of the Device Configuration window, double-click **Order Supplies**. This provides a URL from which to purchase consumables. Supplies information with part numbers and printer information is provided.
- 5. Select the part numbers that you want to order and follow the instructions on the screen.

# Ordering directly through the HP Easy Printer Care software (for printers that are directly connected to a computer)

Use the HP Easy Printer Care software to order supplies and accessories directly from the computer. Click **Supplies Ordering**, and then click **Shop Online for Supplies**.

# **Part numbers**

The following list of accessories was current at the time of printing. Ordering information and availability of the accessories might change during the life of the printer.

# Paper-handling accessories

Item	Description	Part number
Optional 500-sheet tray and feeder unit (tray 3)	Optional tray to increase paper capacity. Holds Letter, A4, Legal, A5, B5 (JIS), Executive, and 8.5 x 13 paper sizes.  Note: This tray is included with the HP LaserJet 5200dtn printer.	Q7548A
Optional duplexer	Provides automatic printing on both sides of the paper.	Q7549A

# **Print cartridge**

Item	Description	Part number
HP LaserJet print cartridge	12,000-page cartridge	Q7516A

# **Memory**

Item	Description	Part number
100-pin 133MHz DDR DIMM	32 MB	Q7713A
Boosts the ability of the printer to handle large or complex print jobs.	48 MB	Q7714A
	64 MB	Q7715A
	128 MB	Q7718A
	256 MB	Q7719A
	512 MB	Q7720A

### **Cables and interfaces**

Item	Description	Part number
Enhanced I/O (EIO) cards	HP Jetdirect 620n Fast Ethernet (10/100Base-TX) print server	J7934A
HP Jetdirect print server multi-protocol EIO network cards:	HP Jetdirect 680n 802.11b wireless internal print server	J6058A
	HP Jetdirect Connectivity card for USB, serial, and LocalTalk connections	J4135A

ENWW Part numbers 173

Item	Description	Part number
Parallel cables	2-meter IEEE 1284-B cable	C2950A
	3-meter IEEE 1284-B cable	C2951A
USB cable	2-meter A to B cable	C6518A

### Print media

For more information about media supplies, go to <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies">http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies</a>.

Item	Description	Part number
HP Soft Gloss laser paper	Letter (220 x 280 mm), 50 sheets/box	C4179A/Asia-Pacific countries/regions
For use with HP LaserJet printers. This is coated paper, good for business documents with high impact, such as brochures, sales material, and documents with graphics and photographic images.	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 50 sheets/box	C4179B/Asia-Pacific countries/regions and Europe
Specifications: 32 lb (120 g/m²).		
HP LaserJet tough paper	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 50 sheets to a carton	Q1298A/North America
For use with HP LaserJet printers. This satin-finish paper is waterproof and tear-proof, yet doesn't compromise on print quality or performance. Use it for signs, maps, menus, and other business applications.	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 50 sheets to a carton	Q1298B/Asia-Pacific countries/regions and Europe
HP Premium Choice LaserJet paper	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPU1132/North America
HP's brightest LaserJet paper. Expect spectacular color and crisp black from this paper that is extra smooth and	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 250 sheets/ream, 6-ream carton	HPU1732 North America
brilliantly white. This is ideal for presentations, business plans, external	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 5-ream carton	Q2397A/Asia-Pacific countries/regions
correspondence and other high-value documents	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 250 sheet/ream, 5-ream carton	CHP412/Europe
Specifications: 98 bright, 32 lb. (75 g/m²).	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 500 sheet/ream, 5-ream carton	CHP410/Europe
	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 160 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 500 sheet/ream, 5-ream carton	CHP413/Europe
HP LaserJet paper	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPJ1124/North America
For use with HP LaserJet printers. This is good for letterhead, high-value memos, legal documents, direct mail,	Legal (8.5 x 14 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPJ1424/North America
and correspondence.  Specifications: 96 bright, 24 lb (90 g/m²).	Letter (220 x 280 mm), 500 sheets/ ream, 5-ream carton	Q2398A/Asia-Pacific countries/regions
	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 500 sheets/ream, 5-ream carton	Q2400A/Asia-Pacific countries/regions
	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 500 sheets/ream	CHP310/Europe

Item	Description	Part number	
HP Printing paper For use with HP LaserJet and inkjet	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPP1122/North America and Mexico	
printers. This has been created especially for small and home offices. It is heavier and brighter than copier paper.	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 500 sheets/ream, 3-ream carton	HPP113R/North America	
	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 500 sheets/ream, 5-ream carton	CHP210/Europe	
Specifications: 92 bright, 22 lb.	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 300 sheets/ream, 5-ream carton	CHP213/Europe	
HP Multipurpose paper	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPM1120/North America	
For use with all office equipment-laser and inkjet printers, copiers, and fax	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 500 sheets/ream, 5-	HPM115R/North America	
machines. This has been created for businesses that want one paper for all	ream carton	HP25011/North America	
their office needs. It is brighter and smoother than other office papers.	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 250 sheets/ream, 12-ream carton	HPM113H/North America	
Specifications: 90 bright, 20 lb (75 g/m²).	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 3-hole, 500 sheets/ ream, 10-ream carton	HPM1420/North America	
	Legal (8.5 x 14 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton		
HP Office paper  For use with all office equipment-laser and inkjet printers, copiers, and fax machines. This is good for high-volume	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPC8511/North America and Mexico	
	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 3-hole, 500 sheets/ ream, 10-ream carton	HPC3HP/North America	
printing.  Specifications: 84 bright, 20 lb (75 g/m²).	Legal (8.5 x 14 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPC8514/North America	
	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), Quick Pack; 2,500-sheet carton	HP2500S/North America and Mexico	
	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), Quick Pack 3-hole; 2,500-sheet carton	HP2500P/North America	
	Letter (220 x 280 mm), 500 sheets/ ream, 5-ream carton	Q2408A/Asia-Pacific countries/regions	
	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 500 sheets/ream, 5-ream carton	Q2407A/Asia-Pacific countries/regions	
	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 500 sheets/ream, 5-ream carton	CHP110/Europe	
	A4 (210 x 297 mm), Quick Pack; 2500 sheets/ream, 5-ream carton	CHP113/Europe	
HP Office recycled paper	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPE1120/North America	
For use with all office equipment-laser and inkjet printers, copiers, and fax machines. This is good for high-volume	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 3-hole, 500 sheets/ ream, 10-ream carton	HPE113H/North America	
printing.  Satisfies U.S. Executive Order 13101 for environmentally preferable products.	Legal (8.5 x 14 in), 500 sheets/ream, 10-ream carton	HPE1420/North America	

ENWW Part numbers 175

Item	Description	Part number
Specifications: 84 bright, 20 lb, 30% post-consumer content.		
HP LaserJet transparencies	Letter (8.5 x 11 in), 50 sheets to a carton	92296T/North America, Asia-Pacific countries/regions, and Europe
For use only with HP LaserJet monochrome printers. For crisp, sharp text and graphics, rely on the only transparencies specifically designed and tested to work with monochrome HP LaserJet printers.	A4 (210 x 297 mm), 50 sheets to a carton	922296U/Asia-Pacific countries/regions and Europe
Specifications: 4.3-mil thickness.		

# **B** Service and support

# **Hewlett-Packard limited warranty statement**

**HP PRODUCT** 

**DURATION OF LIMITED WARRANTY** 

HP LaserJet 5200, 5200n, 5200tn, and 5200dtn printers

One-year limited warranty

HP warrants to you, the end-user customer, that HP hardware and accessories will be free from defects in materials and workmanship after the date of purchase, for the period specified above. If HP receives notice of such defects during the warranty period, HP will, at its option, either repair or replace products which prove to be defective. Replacement products may be either new or equivalent in performance to new.

HP warrants to you that HP software will not fail to execute its programming instructions after the date of purchase, for the period specified above, due to defects in material and workmanship when properly installed and used. If HP receives notice of such defects during the warranty period, HP will replace software which does not execute its programming instructions due to such defects.

HP does not warrant that the operation of HP products will be uninterrupted or error free. If HP is unable, within a reasonable time, to repair or replace any product to a condition as warranted, you will be entitled to a refund of the purchase price upon prompt return of the product.

HP products may contain remanufactured parts equivalent to new in performance or may have been subject to incidental use.

Warranty does not apply to defects resulting from (a) improper or inadequate maintenance or calibration, (b) software, interfacing, parts or supplies not supplied by HP, (c) unauthorized modification or misuse, (d) operation outside of the published environmental specifications for the product, or (e) improper site preparation or maintenance.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THE ABOVE WARRANTIES ARE EXCLUSIVE AND NO OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION, WHETHER WRITTEN OR ORAL, IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED AND HP SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some countries/regions, states or provinces do not allow limitations on the duration of an implied warranty, so the above limitation or exclusion might not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you might also have other rights that vary from country/region to country/region, state to state, or province to province. HP's limited warranty is valid in any country/region or locality where HP has a support presence for this product and where HP has marketed this product. The level of warranty service you receive may vary according to local standards. HP will not alter form, fit or function of the product to make it operate in a country/region for which it was never intended to function for legal or regulatory reasons.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THE REMEDIES IN THIS WARRANTY STATEMENT ARE YOUR SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES. EXCEPT AS INDICATED ABOVE, IN NO EVENT WILL HP OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR LOSS OF DATA OR FOR DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL,

CONSEQUENTIAL (INCLUDING LOST PROFIT OR DATA), OR OTHER DAMAGE, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE. Some countries/regions, states or provinces do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

THE WARRANTY TERMS CONTAINED IN THIS STATEMENT, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT LAWFULLY PERMITTED, DO NOT EXCLUDE, RESTRICT OR MODIFY AND ARE IN ADDITION TO THE MANDATORY STATUTORY RIGHTS APPLICABLE TO THE SALE OF THIS PRODUCT TO YOU.

# Print cartridge, transfer unit, and fuser limited warranty statement

This HP product is warranted to be free from defects in materials and workmanship.

This warranty does not apply to products that (a) have been refilled, refurbished, remanufactured or tampered with in any way, (b) experience problems resulting from misuse, improper storage, or operation outside of the published environmental specifications for the printer product or (c) exhibit wear from ordinary use.

To obtain warranty service, please return the product to place of purchase (with a written description of the problem and print samples) or contact HP customer support. At HP's option, HP will either replace products that prove to be defective or refund your purchase price.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THE ABOVE WARRANTY IS EXCLUSIVE AND NO OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION, WHETHER WRITTEN OR ORAL, IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED AND HP SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL HP OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL (INCLUDING LOST PROFIT OR DATA), OR OTHER DAMAGE, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE.

THE WARRANTY TERMS CONTAINED IN THIS STATEMENT, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT LAWFULLY PERMITTED, DO NOT EXCLUDE, RESTRICT OR MODIFY AND ARE IN ADDITION TO THE MANDATORY STATUTORY RIGHTS APPLICABLE TO THE SALE OF THIS PRODUCT TO YOU.

178 Appendix B Service and support ENWW

# **HP** maintenance agreements

HP has several types of maintenance agreements that meet a wide range of support needs. Maintenance agreements are not part of the standard warranty. Support services may vary by area. Check with your local HP dealer to determine the services available to you.

#### On-site service agreements

To provide you with the level of support best suited to your needs, HP has on-site service agreements with a selection of response times.

#### Next-day on-site service

This agreement provides support by the next working day following a service request. Extended coverage hours and extended travel beyond HP's designated service zones are available on most on-site agreements (for additional charges).

#### Weekly (volume) on-site service

This agreement provides scheduled weekly on-site visits for organizations with many HP products. This agreement is designated for sites using 25 or more workstation products, including printers, plotters, computers, and disk drives.

#### Repacking the printer

If HP Customer Care determines that your printer needs to be returned to HP for repair, follow the steps below to repack the printer before shipping it.



**CAUTION** Shipping damage as a result of inadequate packing is the customer's responsibility.

#### To repack the printer

1. Remove and retain any DIMMs or CompactFlash cards that you have purchased and installed in the printer. Do not remove the DIMM that came with the printer.



**CAUTION** Static electricity can damage DIMMs. When handling DIMMs, either wear an antistatic wrist strap, or frequently touch the surface of the DIMM antistatic package and then touch bare metal on the printer. To remove the DIMMs, see <a href="Installing printer memory">Installing printer memory</a>.

**2.** Remove and retain the print cartridge.



**CAUTION** It is *extremely important* to remove the print cartridge before shipping the printer. A print cartridge that remains in the printer during shipping will leak and entirely cover the printer engine and other parts with toner.

To prevent damage to the print cartridge, avoid touching the roller on it, and store the print cartridge in its original packing material or so that it is not exposed to light.

3. Remove and retain the power cable, interface cable, and optional accessories.

- 4. If possible, include print samples and 50 to 100 sheets of paper or other print media that did not print correctly.
- 5. In the U.S., call HP Customer Care to request new packing material. In other areas, use the original packing material, if possible. Hewlett-Packard recommends insuring the equipment for shipment.

### **Extended warranty**

HP SupportPack provides coverage for the HP hardware product and all HP-supplied internal components. The hardware maintenance covers a 1- to 3-year period from date of the HP product purchase. The customer must purchase HP SupportPack within the stated factory warranty. For more information, contact the HP Customer Care Service and Support group.

180 Appendix B Service and support ENWW

# **C** Specifications

- Physical specifications
- Electrical specifications
- Acoustic emissions
- Operating environment
- Paper specifications

ENWW 181

# **Physical specifications**

Table C-1 Printer dimensions

Printer model	Height	Depth	Width	Weight <sup>1</sup>
HP LaserJet 5200 and 5200n	275 mm (10.8 in)	535 mm (21 in)	490 mm (19.3 in)	20.2 kg (44.5 lb)
HP LaserJet 5200tn and 5200dtn	404 mm (15.9 in)	535 mm (21 in)	490 mm (19.3 in)	5200tn: 30.2 kg (66.5 lb)
				5200dtn: 33.1 kg (73 lb)
Optional 500-sheet feeder	130 mm (5.1 in)	535 mm (21 in)	490 mm (19.3 in)	9 kg (20 lb)

Without print cartridge

Table C-2 Printer dimensions with all doors and trays fully opened

Printer model	Height	Depth	Width
HP LaserJet 5200 and 5200n	275 mm (10.8 in)	980 mm (38.6 in)	490 mm (19.3 in)
HP LaserJet 5200tn and 5200dtn	404 mm (15.9 in)	1090 mm (42.9 in)	490 mm (19.3 in)

# **Electrical specifications**



**WARNING!** Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This can damage the printer and void the product warranty.

Table C-3 Power requirements

Specification	110-volt models	220-volt models
Power requirements	110 to 127 volts (± 10%)	220 to 240 volts (± 10%)
	50/60 Hz (± 2 Hz)	50/60 Hz (± 2 Hz)
Rated short-term current	10.0 Amps	5.0 Amps

Table C-4 Power consumption (average, in watts)<sup>1</sup>

Printer model	Printing <sup>2</sup>	Ready <sup>3</sup> , <sup>4</sup>	Sleep⁵	Off
HP LaserJet 5200	625 W <sup>6</sup>	11 W	8.5 W	0.4 W
HP LaserJet 5200n	625 W <sup>6</sup>	11 W	8.5 W	0.4 W
HP LaserJet 5200tn	625 W <sup>6</sup>	11 W	8.5 W	0.4 W

182 Appendix C Specifications ENWW

Table C-4 Power consumption (average, in watts) (continued)

Printer model	Printing <sup>2</sup>	Ready <sup>3</sup> , <sup>4</sup>	Sleep⁵	Off
HP LaserJet 5200dtn	625 W <sup>6</sup>	11 W	8.5 W	0.4 W

- Values subject to change. See <a href="https://www.hp.com/support/lj5200">www.hp.com/support/lj5200</a> for current information.
- <sup>2</sup> Power numbers are the highest values measured using all standard voltages.
- <sup>3</sup> Default time from Ready mode to Sleep = 30 minutes.
- <sup>4</sup> Heat dissipation in Ready mode = 37.5 BTU/hour.
- <sup>5</sup> Recovery time from Sleep to start of printing = less than 8.5 seconds.
- <sup>6</sup> Print speed is 35 ppm.

### **Acoustic emissions**

Table C-5 Sound power and pressure level<sup>1,3</sup>

Sound power level	Declared per ISO 9296
Printing <sup>3</sup>	L <sub>WAd</sub> = 6.6 Bels (A) [66 dB(A)]
Ready	Essentially Inaudible
Sound pressure level	Declared per ISO 9296
Printing <sup>3</sup>	L <sub>pAm</sub> =52 dB (A)
Ready	Essentially Inaudible

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Values subject to change. See <a href="www.hp.com/support/lj5200">www.hp.com/support/lj5200</a> for current information.

# **Operating environment**

Table C-6 Necessary conditions

Environmental condition	Printing	Storage/standby
Temperature (printer and print cartridge)	15° to 32.5°C (59° to 89°F)	-20° to 40°C (-4° to 104°F)
Relative humidity	10% to 80%	10% to 90%

ENWW Acoustic emissions 183

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Configuration tested: base printer, simplex printing with A4 paper size.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Print speed is 35 ppm.

# **Paper specifications**

For complete paper specifications for all HP LaserJet printers, see the *HP LaserJet printer family print media guide* (available at <a href="http://www.hp.com/support/lipaperguide">http://www.hp.com/support/lipaperguide</a>).

Category	Specifications
Acid content	5.5 pH to 8.0 pH
Caliper	0.094 to 0.18 mm (3.0 to 7.0 mils)
Curl in ream	Flat within 5 mm (0.02 in)
Cut edge conditions	Cut with sharp blades with no visible fray.
Fusing compatibility	Must not scorch, melt, offset, or release hazardous emissions when heated to 200° C (392°F) for 0.1 second.
Grain	Long grain
Moisture content	4% to 6% by weight
Smoothness	100 to 250 Sheffield

### **Envelopes**

Envelope construction is critical. Envelope fold lines can vary considerably, not only between manufacturers, but also within a box from the same manufacturer. Successful printing on envelopes depends upon the quality of the envelopes. When selecting envelopes, consider the following components:

- Weight: The weight of the envelope paper should not exceed 105 g/m² (28 lb) or jamming might occur.
- **Construction**: Prior to printing, envelopes should lie flat with less than 6 mm (0.25 in) curl, and should not contain air.
- Condition: Envelopes should not be wrinkled, nicked, or otherwise damaged.
- **Temperature**: You should use envelopes that are compatible with the heat and pressure of the printer.
- Size: You should use only envelopes within the following size ranges.
  - **Minimum**: 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in)
  - **Maximum**: 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)



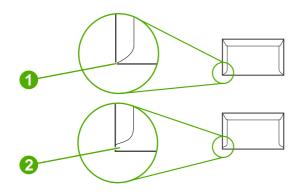
184

**NOTE** Use only tray 1 to print envelopes. You might experience some jams when using any media with a length less than 178 mm (7 in). This might be caused by paper that has been affected by environmental conditions. For optimum performance, make sure you are storing and handling the paper correctly (see <u>Printing and paper storage environment</u>). Choose envelopes in the printer driver (see <u>Printer drivers</u>).

Appendix C Specifications ENWW

#### **Envelopes with double side seams**

Double side-seam construction has vertical seams at both ends of the envelope rather than diagonal seams. This style might be more likely to wrinkle. Be sure the seam extends all the way to the corner of the envelope as illustrated below.



- 1 Acceptable envelope construction
- 2 Unacceptable envelope construction

#### **Envelopes with adhesive strips or flaps**

Envelopes with a peel-off adhesive strip or with more than one flap that folds over to seal must use adhesives compatible with the heat and pressure in the printer. The extra flaps and strips might cause wrinkling, creasing, or even jams and might even damage the fuser.

#### **Envelope margins**

The following gives typical address margins for a commercial #10 or DL envelope.

Type of address	Top margin	Left margin
Return address	15 mm (0.6 in)	15 mm (0.6 in)
Delivery address	51 mm (2 in)	89 mm (3.5 in)



**NOTE** For the best print quality, position margins no closer than 15 mm (0.6 in) from the edges of the envelope. Avoid printing over the area where the envelope seams meet.

#### **Envelope storage**

Proper storage of envelopes helps contribute to print quality. Envelopes should be stored flat. If air is trapped in an envelope, creating an air bubble, then the envelope might wrinkle during printing.

For more information, see **Printing on envelopes**.

ENWW Paper specifications 185

#### Labels



**CAUTION** To avoid damaging the printer, use only labels recommended for laser printers. To prevent serious jams, always use tray 1 to print labels and always use the rear output bin. Never print on the same sheet of labels more than once or print on a partial sheet of labels.

#### Label construction

When selecting labels, consider the quality of each component:

- Adhesives: The adhesive material should be stable at 200°C (392°F), which is the printer fusing temperature.
- Arrangement: Only use labels with no exposed backing between them. Labels can peel off sheets with spaces between the labels, causing serious jams.
- Curl: Prior to printing, labels must lie flat with no more than 13 mm (0.5 in) of curl in any direction.
- Condition: Do not use labels with wrinkles, bubbles, or other indications of separation.

For more information, see Printing on labels.



**NOTE** Choose labels in the printer driver (see Printer drivers).

#### **Transparencies**

Transparencies used in the printer must be able to withstand 200°C (392°F), which is the printer fusing temperature.



**CAUTION** To avoid damaging the printer, use only transparencies recommended for use in HP LaserJet printers, such as HP-brand transparencies. (For ordering information, see <a href="Part">Part</a> numbers.)

For more information, see Printing on transparencies.



186

**NOTE** Choose transparencies in the printer driver (see **Printer drivers**).

Appendix C Specifications ENWW

# D Regulatory information

This section contains the following regulatory information:

- FCC regulations
- Environmental product stewardship program
- Declaration of conformity
- Safety statements

ENWW 187

# **FCC** regulations

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy. If this equipment is not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, it may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase separation between equipment and receiver.
- Connect equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is located.
- Consult your dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician.



188

**NOTE** Any changes or modifications to the printer that are not expressly approved by HP could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Use of a shielded interface cable is required to comply with the Class B limits of Part 15 of FCC rules.

Appendix D Regulatory information ENWW

# **Environmental product stewardship program**

#### **Protecting the environment**

Hewlett-Packard Company is committed to providing quality products in an environmentally sound manner. This product has been designed with several attributes to minimize impacts on our environment.

#### **Ozone production**

This product generates no appreciable ozone gas (O<sub>3</sub>).

#### **Power consumption**

Power usage drops significantly while in Sleep mode, which saves natural resources and saves money without affecting the high performance of this product. This product qualifies for ENERGY STAR® (Version 3.0), which is a voluntary program to encourage the development of energy-efficient office products.



ENERGY STAR® and the ENERGY STAR mark are U.S. registered marks. As an ENERGY STAR partner, Hewlett-Packard Company has determined that this product meets ENERGY STAR Guidelines for energy efficiency. For more information, see <a href="https://www.energystar.gov/">www.energystar.gov/</a>.

# **Toner consumption**

Economode uses significantly less toner, which might extend the life of the print cartridge.

# Paper use

This product's optional automatic duplex feature and N-up printing (multiple pages printed on one page) capability can reduce paper usage and the resulting demands on natural resources.

#### **Plastics**

Plastic parts over 25 grams are marked according to international standards that enhance the ability to identify plastics for recycling purposes at the end of the product's life.

# **HP LaserJet printing supplies**

It's easy to return and recycle your empty HP LaserJet print cartridges—free of charge—with HP Planet Partners. HP is committed to providing inventive, high-quality products and services that are environmentally sound, from product design and manufacturing to distribution, operation and recycling processes. We ensure your returned HP LaserJet print cartridges are recycled properly, processing them to recover valuable plastics and metals for new products and diverting millions of tons of waste from landfills. Since this cartridge is being recycled and used in new materials, it will

not be returned to you. Your empty HP LaserJet print cartridges are recycled responsibly when you participate in the HP Planet Partners program. Thank you for being environmentally responsible!

In many countries/regions, this product's printing supplies (for example, print cartridges) can be returned to HP through the HP Printing Supplies Returns and Recycling Program. An easy-to-use and free take back program is available in more than 35 countries/regions. Multilingual program information and instructions are included in every new HP LaserJet print cartridge and supplies package.

#### HP printing supplies returns and recycling program information

Since 1992, HP has offered HP LaserJet supplies return and recycling free of charge. In 2004, HP Planet Partners for LaserJet Supplies was available in 85% of the world market where HP LaserJet supplies are sold. Postage-paid and pre-addressed labels are included within the instruction guide in most HP LaserJet print cartridge boxes. Labels and bulk boxes are also available through the Web site: <a href="https://www.hp.com/recycle">www.hp.com/recycle</a>.

Use the label to return empty, original HP LaserJet print cartridges only. Please do not use this label for non-HP cartridges, refilled or remanufactured cartridges, or warranty returns. Printing supplies or other objects inadvertently sent to the HP Planet Partners program cannot be returned.

More than 10 million HP LaserJet print cartridges were recycled globally in 2004 through the HP Planet Partners supplies recycling program. This record number represents 26 million pounds of print cartridge materials diverted from landfills. Worldwide, in 2004, HP recycled an average of 59% of the print cartridge by weight consisting primarily of plastic and metals. Plastics and metals are used to make new products such as HP products, plastic trays, and spools. The remaining materials are disposed of in an environmentally responsible manner.

- U.S. returns. For a more environmentally responsible return of used cartridges and supplies,
  HP encourages the use of bulk returns. Simply bundle two or more cartridges together and use
  the single, pre-paid, pre-addressed UPS label that is supplied in the package. For more
  information in the U.S., call 1-800-340-2445 or visit the HP Web site at <a href="https://www.hp.com/recycle">www.hp.com/recycle</a>.
- **Non-U.S. returns.** Non-U.S. customers should visit the <a href="www.hp.com/recycle">www.hp.com/recycle</a> Web site for further information regarding availability of the HP Supplies Returns and Recycling Program.

### **Paper**

This product is capable of using recycled papers when the paper meets the guidelines outlined in the *HP LaserJet Printer Family Print Media Specification Guide*. This product is suitable for the use of recycled paper according to EN12281:2002.

#### **Material restrictions**

This HP product does not contain added mercury.

This HP product contains a battery that might require special handling at end-of-life. The batteries contained in or supplied by Hewlett-Packard for this product include the following:

HP LaserJet 5200 printer	
Туре	Carbon monofluoride lithium battery BR1632
Weight	(1.5 g)

HP LaserJet 5200 printer	
Location	On formatter board
User-removable	No





## 廢電池請回收

For recycling information, you can go to <a href="www.hp.com/recycle">www.hp.com/recycle</a>, or contact your local authorities or the Electronics Industries Alliance: <a href="www.eiae.org">www.eiae.org</a>.

# Disposal of waste equipment by users in private households in the European Union



This symbol on the product or on its packaging indicates that this product must not be disposed of with your other household waste. Instead, it is your responsibility to dispose of your waste equipment by handing it over to a designated collection point for the recycling of waste electrical and electronic equipment. The separate collection and recycling of your waste equipment at the time of disposal will help to conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or the shop where you purchased the product.

### **Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)**

Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for supplies containing chemical substances (for example, toner) can be obtained by contacting the HP Web site at <a href="https://www.hp.com/go/msds">www.hp.com/go/msds</a> or <a href

#### For more information

To obtain information about these environmental topics:

- Product environmental profile sheet for this and many related HP products
- HP's commitment to the environment

- HP's environmental management system
- HP's end-of-life product return and recycling program
- Material Safety Data Sheets

Visit www.hp.com/go/environment or www.hp.com/hpinfo/community/environment/productinfo/safety.

192 Appendix D Regulatory information

# **Declaration of conformity**

#### **Declaration of conformity**

#### **Declaration of Conformity**

according to ISO/IEC Guide 22 and EN 45014

Manufacturer's Name:Hewlett-Packard CompanyManufacturer's Address:11311 Chinden Boulevard,

Boise, Idaho 83714-1021, USA

declares, that the product

Product Name: HP LaserJet 5200 series

Regulatory Model Number<sup>3)</sup>: BOISB-0502-00

Including: Q7548A Optional 500-Sheet Input Tray and Q7549A Optional Duplexing

Accessory

Product Options: ALL

Print Cartridge: Q7516A

#### conforms to the following Product Specifications:

Safety: IEC 60950-1:2001 / EN60950-1: 2001 +A11

IEC 60825-1:1993 +A1 +A2 / EN 60825-1:1994 +A1 +A2 (Class 1 Laser/LED Product)

GB4943-2001

EMC: CISPR22:1993 +A1 +A2 / EN 55022:1994 +A1 +A2 - Class B1)

EN 61000-3-2:2000 EN 61000-3-3:1995 +A1 EN 55024:1998 +A1 +A2

FCC Title 47 CFR. Part 15 Class B2) / ICES-003. Issue 4

GB9254-1998, GB17625.1-2003

#### Supplementary Information:

The product herewith complies with the requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC and the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC, and carries the CE-Marking accordingly.

- 1) The product was tested in a typical configuration with Hewlett-Packard Personal Computer Systems.
- 2) This Device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- 3) For regulatory purposes, this product is assigned a Regulatory model number. This number should not be confused with the marketing name or the product number(s).

Boise, Idaho, USA

#### August 16, 2005

#### For regulatory topics only:

Australia Contact: Product Regulations Manager, Hewlett-Packard Australia Ltd.,, 31-41 Joseph Street, Blackburn, Victoria 3130,

Australia

European Contact: Your Local Hewlett-Packard Sales and Service Office or Hewlett-Packard GmbH, Department HQ-TRE /

Standards Europe,, Herrenberger Strasse 140, , D-71034, Böblingen, (FAX: +49-7031-14-3143)

USA Contact: Product Regulations Manager, Hewlett-Packard Company,, PO Box 15, Mail Stop 160, Boise, ID 83707-0015, ,

(Phone: 208-396-6000)

# Safety statements

#### Laser safety

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration has implemented regulations for laser products manufactured since August 1, 1976. Compliance is mandatory for products marketed in the United States. The printer is certified as a "Class 1" laser product under the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Radiation Performance Standard according to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968. Since radiation emitted inside the printer is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape during any phase of normal user operation.



**WARNING!** Using controls, making adjustments, or performing procedures other than those specified in this user guide may result in exposure to hazardous radiation.

### **Canadian DOC regulations**

Complies with Canadian EMC Class B requirements.

« Conforme à la classe B des normes canadiennes de compatibilité électromagnétiques. « CEM ». »

#### **VCCI statement (Japan)**

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会(VCCI)の基準に基づくクラスB情報技術装置です。この装置は、家庭環境で使用することを目的としていますが、この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。

取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをして下さい。

# Power cord statement (Japan)

製品には、同梱された電源コードをお使い下さい。 同梱された電源コードは、他の製品では使用出来ません。

### EMI statement (Korea)

B급 기기 (가정용 정보통신기기)

이 기기는 가정용으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기로서 주거지역에서는 물론 모든지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.

#### Laser statement for Finland

#### Luokan 1 laserlaite

Klass 1 Laser Apparat

HP LaserJet 5200, 5200n, 5200tn, 5200tn, laserkirjoitin on käyttäjän kannalta turvallinen luokan 1 laserlaite. Normaalissa käytössä kirjoittimen suojakotelointi estää lasersäteen pääsyn laitteen ulkopuolelle. Laitteen turvallisuusluokka on määritetty standardin EN 60825-1 (1994) mukaisesti.

#### **VAROITUS!**

Laitteen käyttäminen muulla kuin käyttöohjeessa mainitulla tavalla saattaa altistaa käyttäjän turvallisuusluokan 1 ylittävälle näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle.

#### **VARNING!**

Om apparaten används på annat sätt än i bruksanvisning specificerats, kan användaren utsättas för osynlig laserstrålning, som överskrider gränsen för laserklass 1.

#### **HUOLTO**

HP LaserJet 5200, 5200n, 5200tn, 5200tn, 5200tn -kirjoittimen sisällä ei ole käyttäjän huollettavissa olevia kohteita. Laitteen saa avata ja huoltaa ainoastaan sen huoltamiseen koulutettu henkilö. Tällaiseksi huoltotoimenpiteeksi ei katsota väriainekasetin vaihtamista, paperiradan puhdistusta tai muita käyttäjän käsikirjassa lueteltuja, käyttäjän tehtäväksi tarkoitettuja ylläpitotoimia, jotka voidaan suorittaa ilman erikoistyökaluja.

#### VARO!

Mikäli kirjoittimen suojakotelo avataan, olet alttiina näkymättömällelasersäteilylle laitteen ollessa toiminnassa. Älä katso säteeseen.

#### **VARNING!**

Om laserprinterns skyddshölje öppnas då apparaten är i funktion, utsättas användaren för osynlig laserstrålning. Betrakta ej strålen. Tiedot laitteessa käytettävän laserdiodin säteilyominaisuuksista: Aallonpituus 775-795 nm Teho 5 m W Luokan 3B laser.

ENWW Safety statements 195

# E Working with memory and print server cards

This section explains the memory features of the printer and provides steps for expansion.

- Overview
- Installing printer memory
- Installing CompactFlash cards
- Checking DIMM or CompactFlash installation
- Saving resources (permanent resources)
- Enabling memory for Windows
- Using HP Jetdirect print server cards

ENWW 197

### **Overview**

One dual inline memory module (DIMM) slot and two CompactFlash slots are available for upgrading the printer with the following items:

- More printer memory—DIMMs are available in 32, 48, 64, 128, 256, and 512 MB.
- CompactFlash font cards—Unlike standard printer memory, CompactFlash cards can be used
  to permanently store downloaded items, such as fonts and forms, even when the printer is off.
  These cards can also be used to enable the printer to print non-Roman characters.
- Other DIMM- and CompactFlash-based printer languages and printer options.

For ordering information, see Ordering parts, accessories, and supplies.



**NOTE** Single inline memory modules (SIMMs) used in previous HP LaserJet printers are not compatible with the printer.

The printer also has one EIO slot for expanding the printer networking capabilities. The EIO slot can be used to upgrade the printer with an additional network connection, such as a wireless print server, network card, or a connectivity card for a serial or AppleTalk connection.



**NOTE** Some HP LaserJet 5200 series printers come with a network device already installed. The EIO slot may be used to provide networking capabilities in addition to those already built into the printer.

To find out how much memory is installed in the printer, or to find out what is installed in the EIO slots, print a configuration page. See <u>Using printer information pages</u>.

# **Installing printer memory**

You might want to add more printer memory to the printer if you often print complex graphics, print PostScript (PS) documents, or use many downloaded fonts. Added memory also gives you more flexibility in supporting job-storage features, such as guick copying.

#### To install printer memory

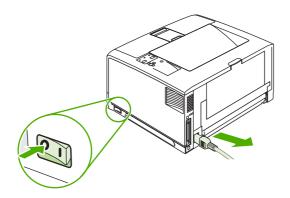


**CAUTION** Static electricity can damage DIMMs. When handling DIMMs, either wear an antistatic wrist strap or frequently touch the surface of the DIMM antistatic package, then touch bare metal on the printer.

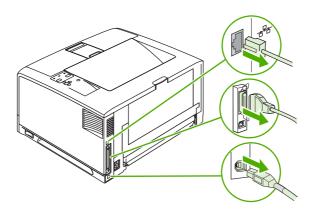
The HP LaserJet 5200 printers come with one DIMM slot. If desired, you can replace a DIMM installed in the slot with a higher memory DIMM.

If you have not already done so, print a configuration page to find out how much memory is installed in the printer before adding more memory. See <u>Using printer information pages</u>.

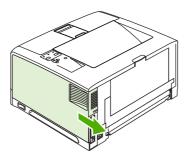
After the configuration page has printed, turn the printer off and disconnect the power cord.



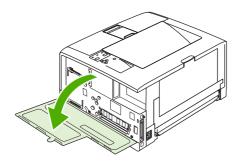
Disconnect all interface cables.



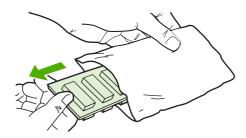
Remove the right side panel by sliding it towards the rear of the printer until the side slides from the printer.



**4.** Open the access door by pulling on the metal tab.

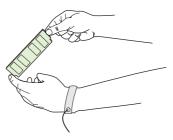


**5**. Remove the DIMM from the antistatic package.

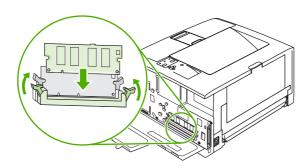




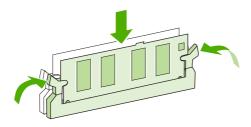
**CAUTION** To reduce the possibility of damage caused by static electricity, always wear an electrostatic discharge (ESD) wrist strap or touch the surface of the antistatic package before handling DIMMs.



6. Hold the DIMM by the edges, and align the notches on the DIMM with the DIMM slot. (Check that the locks on each side of the DIMM slot are open.)

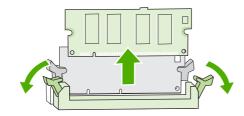


Press the DIMM straight into the slot, and press firmly. Make sure the locks on each side of the DIMM snap into place.

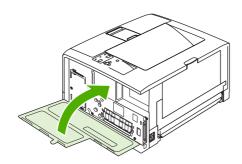




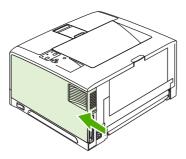
To remove a DIMM, first release the locks.



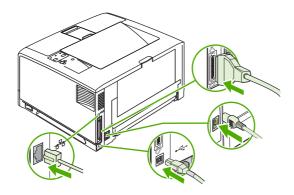
8. Close the access door, and press firmly until it snaps into place.



**9.** To replace the right side panel, line up the alignment arrows and slide the panel toward the front of the printer until it latches into place.



**10.** Reconnect the interface cable(s) and the power cord.



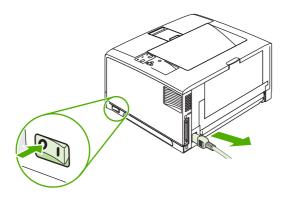
11. Turn the printer on.

## **Installing CompactFlash cards**

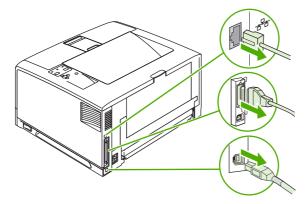
Up to two CompactFlash cards can be installed to add fonts to the printer.

#### To install a CompactFlash card

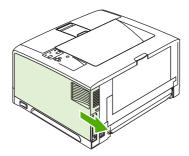
1. After the configuration page has printed, turn the printer off and disconnect the power cord.



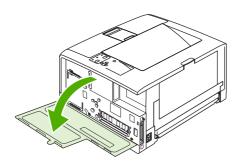
Disconnect all interface cables.



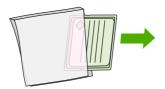
**3.** Remove the right side panel by sliding it towards the rear of the printer until the side slides from the printer.



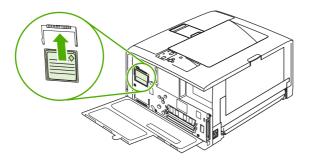
4. Open the access door by pulling on the metal tab.



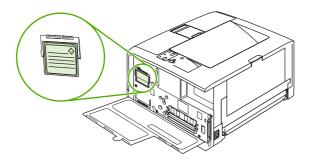
5. Remove the new CompactFlash card from its package.



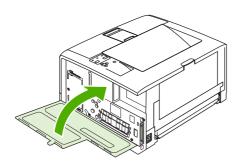
**6.** Hold the CompactFlash card by its edges and line up the grooves in the side of the card with the tabs in the CompactFlash card slot.



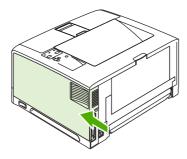
7. Slide the CompactFlash card into place.



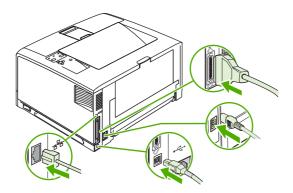
8. Close the access door, and press firmly until it snaps into place.



9. To replace the right side panel, line up the alignment arrows and slide the panel toward the front of the printer until it latches into place.



### 10. Reconnect the interface cable(s) and the power cord.



Use Device Storage Manager in HP Web Jetadmin to manage fonts. For more information, see the Help in HP Web Jetadmin.

## **Checking DIMM or CompactFlash installation**

After installing the DIMM or CompactFlash card, make sure that the installation was successful.

#### To verify that DIMMs or CompactFlash cards are installed correctly

- Turn the printer on. Check that the Ready light is illuminated after the printer has gone through the startup sequence. If an error message appears, a DIMM or CompactFlash card might have been incorrectly installed. See Control-panel messages.
- Print a configuration page (see Using printer information pages).
- Check the memory section on the configuration page and compare it to the configuration page that was printed before the memory installation. If the amount of memory has not increased, the DIMM or CompactFlash card might not be installed correctly, or the DIMM or CompactFlash card might be defective. Repeat the installation procedure. If necessary, install a different DIMM of CompactFlash card.



NOTE If you installed a printer language (personality), check the "Installed Personalities and Options" section on the configuration page. This area should list the new printer language.

## **Saving resources (permanent resources)**

Utilities or jobs that you download to the printer sometimes include resources (for example, fonts, macros, or patterns). Resources that are internally marked as permanent remain in the printer memory until you turn the printer power off.

Use the following guidelines if you use the page description language (PDL) ability to mark resources as permanent. For technical details, see an appropriate PDL reference for PCL or PS.

- Mark resources as permanent only when it is absolutely necessary that they remain in memory while the printer power is turned on.
- Send permanent resources to the printer only at the beginning of a print job and not while the printer is printing.



**NOTE** Overusing permanent resources or downloading them while the printer is printing might affect printer performance or the ability to print complex pages.

# **Enabling memory for Windows**

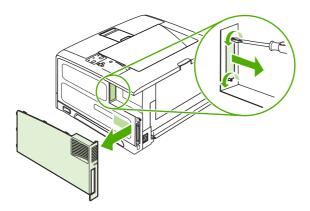
- 1. On the **Start** menu, point to **Settings**, and click **Printers** or **Printers and Faxes**.
- Select this printer and select **Properties**.
- 3. On the **Configure** tab, click **More**.
- In the **Total Memory** field, type or select the total amount of memory that is now installed.
- **5**. Click OK.
- 6. Go to Checking DIMM or CompactFlash installation.

## **Using HP Jetdirect print server cards**

Follow these procedures to install or remove an EIO card.

## Installing an HP Jetdirect print server card

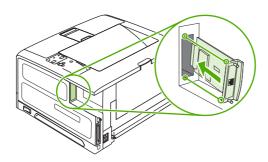
- 1. Turn off the printer, and then remove the right cover.
- 2. Remove the two screws and cover plate from the EIO slot on the back of the printer.



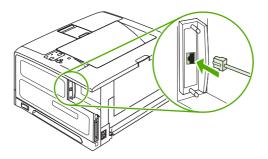


**NOTE** Do not discard the screws or the cover plate. Save them for future use if you remove the EIO card.

3. Install the EIO card in the EIO slot and tighten the screws.



Connect the network cable to the EIO card.



Replace the right cover, turn on the printer, and then print a configuration page to verify that the new EIO device is recognized. See Using printer information pages.



NOTE When you print a configuration page, an HP Jetdirect configuration page that contains network configuration and status information also prints.

### Removing an HP Jetdirect print server card

- 1. Turn off the printer.
- 2. Disconnect the network cable from the EIO card.
- Remove the two screws from the EIO card, and then remove the EIO card from the EIO slot.
- Place the cover plate from the EIO slot onto the back of the printer. Insert and tighten the two screws.
- Turn on the printer.

# F Printer commands

Most programs do not require you to specify printer commands. See your computer and software documentation to find the method for specifying printer commands, if needed.

PCL 6 and PCL 5e	PCL 6 and PCL 5e printer commands tell the printer which tasks to perform or which fonts to use. This section provides a quick reference for users who are already familiar with PCL 6 and PCL 5e command structure.
HP-GL/2	The printer can print vector graphics by using the HP-GL/2 graphics language. Printing in the HP-GL/2 language requires that the printer leave PCL 5e language and enter HP-GL/2 mode, which can be done by sending the printer PCL 5e code. Some programs switch languages through their drivers.
PJL	HP's Printer Job Language (PJL) provides control above PCL 5e and other printer languages. The four major functions provided by PJL are: printer language switching, job separation, printer configuration, and status readback from the printer. PJL commands can be used to change printer default settings.



**NOTE** The table at the end of this section contains commonly used PCL 5e commands. (See Common PCL 6 and PCL 5 printer commands.) For a complete listing and explanation of how to use PCL 5e, HP-GL/2, and PJL commands, see the HP PCL/PJL Reference Set, which is available on CD (HP part number 5961-0975).

ENWW 213

## **Understanding PCL 6 and PCL 5e printer command syntax**

Before using printer commands, compare these characters:

Lowercase I:	I	Uppercase O:	0
Number one:	1	Number 0:	0

Many printer commands use the lowercase letter I (I) and the number one (1), or the uppercase letter O (O) and the number zero (0). These characters might not appear on your screen as shown here. You must use the exact character and case specified for PCL 6 or PCL 5e printer commands.

The figure below explains the elements of a typical printer command (in this instance, a command for page orientation).



1 Escape character (begins the escape sequence)
2 Parameterized character
3 Group character
4 Value field (contains both alpha and numeric characters)
5 Termination character (uppercase)

## **Combining escape sequences**

Escape sequences can be combined into one escape sequence string. Follow these three important rules when combining code:

- 1. The first two characters after the  $E_c$  character are the parameterized and group characters. These characters must be the same in all of the commands that are to be combined.
- When combining escape sequences, change the uppercase termination character in each individual escape sequence to lowercase.
- 3. The final character of the combined escape sequence must be uppercase.

The following is an example of an escape sequence string that would be sent to the printer to select legal-size media, landscape orientation, and eight lines per inch:

E<sub>c</sub>&I3AE<sub>c</sub>&I1OE<sub>c</sub>&I8D

The following escape sequence sends the same printer commands by combining them into a shorter sequence:

**ENWW** 

214 Appendix F Printer commands

### Using escape characters

Printer commands always begin with the escape character (E<sub>c</sub>).

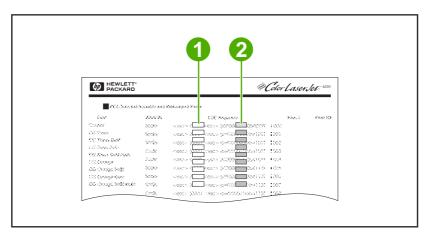
The following table shows how the escape character can be inserted in various MS-DOS programs.

DOS program	Entry	What appears
Lotus 1-2-3 and Symphony	Type \027	027
Microsoft Word for MS-DOS	Hold down Alt and type 027 on the numeric keypad	<b>↔</b>
WordPerfect for MS-DOS	Type <27>	<27>
MS-DOS Edit	Hold down Ctrl+P, and press Esc	<b>↔</b>
MS-DOS Edlin	Hold down Ctrl+V, and press [	^[
dBase	?? CHR(27)+"command"	?? CHR(27)+" "

## **Selecting PCL 6 and PCL 5 fonts**

The printer font list provides PCL 6 and PCL 5 printer commands for selecting fonts. See <u>Using</u> <u>printer information pages</u> for information about how to print the list. A sample section is shown in the following illustration.

One variable box is available for specifying symbol sets and one for specifying point size. These variables must be filled in, or the printer will use defaults. For example, if you want a symbol set that contains line-draw characters, select the 10U (PC-8) or 12U (PC-850) symbol set. Other common symbol set codes are listed in the section <a href="Common PCL 6">Common PCL 6</a> and <a href="PCL 5">PCL 5</a> printer commands.



- 1 Symbol set
- 2 Point size



NOTE Fonts are either "fixed" or "proportional" in spacing. The printer contains both fixed fonts (Courier, Letter Gothic, and Lineprinter) and proportional fonts (CG Times, Arial, Times New Roman, and others). Fixed-spaced fonts are generally used in programs such as spreadsheets and databases, where it is important for columns to line up vertically. Proportional-spaced fonts are generally used in text and word-processing programs.

### Common PCL 6 and PCL 5 printer commands

Table F-1 Job-control commands

Function	Command	Options (#)
Reset	E₀E	Not available
Number of copies	E <sub>c</sub> &I#X	1 to 999
two-sided/one-sided printing	E <sub>c</sub> &I#S	0 = Simplex (one-sided) printing
		1 = Duplex (two-sided) with long edge binding
		2 = Duplex (two-sided) with short edge binding

Table F-2 Page-control commands

Function	Command	Options (#)
Paper source	E <sub>c</sub> &I#H	0 = Prints or ejects current page
		1 = Tray 2
		2 = Manual feed, paper
		3 = Manual feed, envelope
		4 = Tray 1
		5 = Tray 3
		6 = Optional envelop feeder
		7 = Auto select
		8 = Tray 4
		20 to 69 = external trays
Paper size	E <sub>c</sub> &I#A	1 = Executive
		2 = Letter
		3 = Legal
		25 = A5
		26 = A4
		45 = JIS B5

Table F-2 Page-control commands (continued)

Function	Command	Options (#)
		80 = Monarch envelope
		81 = Commercial 10 envelope
		90 = DL ISO envelope
		91 = C5 ISO envelope
		100 = B5 ISO envelope/B5 ISO
		101 = Custom
Paper type	E <sub>c</sub> &n#	5WdBond = Bond
		6WdPlain = Plain
		6WdColor = Color
		7WdLabels = Labels
		9WdRecycled = Recycled
		11WdLetterhead = Letterhead
		10WdCardstock = Cardstock
		11WdPrepunched = Prepunched
		11WdPreprinted = Preprinted
		13WdTransparency = Transparency
		#WdCustompapertype = Custom <sup>1</sup>
Orientation	E <sub>c</sub> &I#O	0 = Portrait
		1 = Landscape
		2 = Reverse portrait
		3 = Reverse landscape
Top margin	E <sub>c</sub> &I#E	# = Number of lines
Text length (bottom margin)	E <sub>c</sub> &l#F	# = Number of lines from top margin
Left margin	E <sub>c</sub> &a#L	# = Column number
Right margin	E <sub>c</sub> &a#M	# = Column number from left margin
Horizontal motion index	E <sub>c</sub> &k#H	1/120-inch increments (compresses print horizontally)
Vertical motion index	E <sub>c</sub> &I#C	1/48-inch increments (compresses print vertically)
Line spacing	E <sub>c</sub> &I#D	# = Lines per inch (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 12, 16, 24, 48)
Perforation skip	E <sub>c</sub> &l#L	0 = Disable (turn off)
		1 = Enable (turn on)

For custom paper, replace "Custompapertype" with the name of the paper, and replace the "#" with the number of characters in the name, plus 1.

Table F-3 Cursor Positioning

Function	Command	Options (#)
Vertical position (rows)	E <sub>c</sub> &a#R	# = Row number
Vertical position (dots)	E <sub>c</sub> *p#Y	# = Dot number (300 dots = 1 in)
Vertical position (decipoints)	E <sub>c</sub> &a#V	# = Decipoint number (720 decipoints = 1 in)
Horizontal position (columns)	E <sub>c</sub> &a#C	# = Column number
Horizontal position (dots)	E <sub>c</sub> *p#X	# = Dot number (300 dots = 1 in)
Horizontal position (decipoints)	E <sub>c</sub> &a#H	# = Decipoint number (720 decipoints = 1 in)

### Table F-4 Programming hints

Function	Command	Options (#)
End of line wrap	E <sub>c</sub> &s#C	0 = Enable (turn off)
		1 = Disable (turn on)
Display functions on	E <sub>c</sub> Y	Not available
Display functions off	E <sub>c</sub> Z	Not available

#### Table F-5 Language selection

Function	Command	Options (#)
Enter PCL 6 or PCL 5 mode	E <sub>c</sub> %#A	0 = Use previous PCL 5 cursor position
		1 = Use current HP-GL/2 pen position
Enter HP-GL/2 mode	E <sub>c</sub> %#B	0 = Use previous HP-GL/2 pen position
		1 = Use current PCL 5 cursor position

Table F-6 Font selection

Function	Command	Options (#)
Symbol sets	E <sub>c</sub> (#	8U = HP Roman-8 Symbol Set
		10U = IBM Layout (PC-8) (code page 437) Default Symbol Set
		12U = IBM Layout for Europe (PC-850) (code page 850)
		8M = Math-8
		19U = Windows 3.1 Latin 1

Table F-6 Font selection (continued)

Function	Command	Options (#)
		9E = Windows 3.1 Latin 2 (commonly used in Eastern Europe)
		5T = Windows 3.1 Latin 5 (commonly used in Turkey)
		579L = Wingdings Font
Primary spacing	E <sub>c</sub> (s#P	0 = Fixed
		1 = Proportional
Primary pitch	E <sub>c</sub> (s#H	# = Characters/inch
Set pitch mode <sup>1</sup>	E <sub>c</sub> &k#S	0 = 10
		4 = 12 (elite)
		2 = 16.5 - 16.7 (compressed)
Primary height	E <sub>c</sub> (s#V	# = Points
Primary style	E <sub>c</sub> (s#S	0 = Upright (solid)
		1 = Italic
		4 = Condensed
		5 = Condensed italic
Primary stroke wt.	E <sub>c</sub> (s#B	0 = Medium (book or text)
		1 = Semi bold
		3 = Bold
		4 = Extra bold
Typeface	E <sub>c</sub> (s#T	Print a PCL 6 or PCL 5 font list to view the command for each internal font.

<sup>1</sup> The preferred method is to use the primary pitch command.

220 Appendix F Printer commands ENWW

# **Glossary**

bidirectional communication Two-way data transmission.

**bin** A receptacle for holding printed pages.

**BOOTP** Abbreviation for "Bootstrap Protocol," an Internet protocol that a computer uses to find its IP address.

**calibration** The process in which the printer makes internal adjustments to produce the best print quality.

**chooser** A Macintosh accessory that you use to select a device.

**control panel** The area on the printer that contains buttons and a display screen. Use the control panel to set printer settings and to get information about the printer status.

**default** The normal or standard setting for hardware or software.

**DHCP** Abbreviation for "dynamic host configuration protocol." Individual computers or peripherals that are connected to a network use DHCP to find their own configuration information, including the IP address.

**DIMM** Abbreviation for "dual inline memory module." A small circuit board that holds memory chips.

**duplex** A feature that accommodates printing on both sides of a sheet of paper. Also called "two-sided printing."

**EIO** Abbreviation for "enhanced input/output." A hardware interface that is used to add a print server, network adaptor, hard disk, or other plug-in item for HP printers.

**Emulated PostScript** Software that emulates Adobe PostScript, a programming language that describes the appearance of the printed page. This printer language appears as "PS" in many menus.

**firmware** Programming instructions that are stored in a read-only memory unit inside the printer.

**font** A complete set of letters, numerals, and symbols in a typeface.

**fuser** The assembly that uses heat to fuse the toner onto the print media.

grayscale Various shades of gray.

**halftone pattern** A halftone pattern uses differing sizes of ink dots to produce a continuous-tone image such as a photograph.

**HP Easy Printer Care software** Software that provides the ability to track and maintain printers from your computer desktop.

**HP Jetdirect** An HP product for network printing.

**HP Web Jetadmin** An HP-trademarked Web-based printer control software that you can use on a computer to manage any peripheral that is connected to an HP Jetdirect print server.

ENWW Glossary 221

I/O Abbreviation for "input/output," refers to computer-port settings.

**IP address** The unique number assigned to a computer device that is connected to a network.

**IPX/SPX** Abbreviation for "internetwork packet exchange/sequenced packet exchange."

media The paper, labels, transparencies, or other material on which the printer prints the image.

**memory tag** A memory partition that has a specific address.

monochrome Black and white. Devoid of color.

**network** A system of computers interconnected by telephone wires or other means in order to share information.

**network administrator** A person who manages a network.

**page buffer** Temporary printer memory used to hold page data while the printer creates an image of the page.

**PCL** Abbreviation for "Printer Control Language."

**peripheral** An auxiliary device, such as a printer, modem, or storage system, that works in conjunction with a computer.

**personality** Distinctive features or characteristics of a printer or printer language.

pixel Abbreviation for "picture element," the smallest unit of area in an image displayed on a screen.

PJL Abbreviation for "printer job language."

PostScript A trademarked page-description language.

PPD Abbreviation for "PostScript printer description."

**printer driver** A software program that a computer uses to gain access to printer features.

**RAM** Abbreviation for "random access memory," a type of computer memory that stores data that can change.

raster image An image composed of dots.

**render** The process of producing text or graphics.

**ROM** Abbreviation for "read-only memory," a type of computer memory that stores data that should not change.

**supplies** Materials that the printer uses and that must be replaced. The supply item for this printer is the print cartridge.

**TCP/IP** An internet protocol that has become the global standard for communications.

**toner** The fine black or colored powder that forms the image on the printed media.

**transfer unit** The black plastic belt that transports media inside the printer and transfers toner from the print cartridge onto the media.

tray The receptacle that holds blank media.

222 Glossarv ENWW

# Index

Symbols/Numerics	binding edge settings 29	characters, misformed 159
250-sheet tray. See tray 2	layout options 83	cleaning page 33
500-sheet tray. See tray 3	loading paper 82, 90	cleaning the printer 113
	manually 84	clearable warnings setting 35, 44
A	paper sizes supported 82	clock errors 126
A4 paper settings 29, 30	Show Me How menu 24	code CRC errors 134
access denied 133	troubleshooting 123	colored paper, printing on 79
accessibility features 5	usage page 26	commands
accessories	using duplexer 83	escape sequences 214, 215
ordering 172	buffer overflow errors 129	font selection 215, 218
part numbers 173	buttons, control panel 21	PCL 216
acoustic specifications 183	•	syntax 214
adhesive labels. See labels	C	types of 213
anticounterfeit supplies 109	cables	communications settings 38
AppleTalk setting 38, 54	parallel, connecting 50	CompactFlash cards
authorized dealers iii	part numbers 174	accessing 6
auto continue setting 35, 45	USB, connecting 51	installing 204
autoconfiguration, drivers 8	Canadian DOC regulations 194	types available 198
	cancelling a print request 92	verifying installation 208
В	capacities, trays 15	configuration page
bad transmission errors 129	cardstock	printing 96
batteries included 190	fuser modes 32	troubleshooting 117
bidirectional communication	printing on 79	Configure Device menu 29
settings 38	carriage returns, settings 31	contacting HP iii
binding edge settings 29, 83	cartridges	control panel
bins, output	density settings 33	access denied 133
full message 138	EconoMode 33	buttons 21
jams, clearing 148	features 5	cleaning page, printing 113
locating 6	genuine HP 108	clearable warning settings 35
paper curl, troubleshooting 122	jams, clearing 146	Configure Device menu 29
paper path test 40	low 36, 45	date/time settings 34
selecting 61	non-HP 108	Diagnostics menu 40
blank control panel 117	out 36, 46	display 21
blank pages	part numbers 173	I/O menu 38
printing 87	recycling 189	Information menu 26
suppressing 31	replacement intervals 108	language, selecting 37, 47
troubleshooting 123	replacing 110	lights 21
bleeds, printing 76	status messages 21	locating 6
blurred print, troubleshooting 163	storage 108	menus 23
both sides, printing on	warranty 178	messages, alphabetical list 133

ENWW Index 223

messages, numerical list 126	verifying installation 208	troubleshooting 123
messages, types of 125	disk	usage page 26
Paper Handling menu 27	EIO slots 198	using 83
Print Quality menu 31	file directory, printing 26	
Printing menu 29	installing 211	E
Resets menu 39	removing 212	e-mail alerts 98
Retrieve Job menu 25	display, control panel	Easy Printer Care software 13,
settings 20, 41, 59	messages 21	103
Show Me How menu 24	disposal, end-of-life 190	EconoMode setting 33
System Setup menu 34	DLC/LLC setting 38, 54	EIO cards
troubleshooting 117	documentation 2	bad transmission error 130
copies, default number of 29	dots, troubleshooting 155, 162	buffer overflow errors 129
counterfeit supplies 109	double-sided printing	installing 211
Courier font settings 30	binding edge settings 29	part numbers 173
cover pages 87, 89, 92	layout options 83	removing 212
covers 89	loading paper 82, 90	settings 38
creased paper, troubleshooting	manual 84	slots 198
160		electrical specifications 182
crooked pages 159	paper sizes supported 82 Show Me How menu 24	embedded I/O buffer overflow
. •	troubleshooting 123	errors 129
curled paper, troubleshooting 160	3	embedded I/O transmission errors
custom-size paper	usage page 26	130
driver settings 86	using duplexer 83	
printing on 76	downloading software 8	embedded Web server 13, 99
settings 27	dpi, settings 32	end-of-life disposal 190
tray settings 29	draft quality printing 32, 33	energy specifications 182
tray specifications 15	drivers	Energy Star compliance 4
customer support	included 4	enlarging documents 86
Linux 169	Macintosh settings 89	envelopes
online iii	Macintosh, troubleshooting 167	default size, setting 29
repacking printer 179	operating systems supported 8	margins 71, 185
D	preconfiguration 9	printing from tray 1 72
D down and anothing 22	presets (Macintosh) 89	sizes supported 16
darkness, setting 33	quick sets (Windows) 85	specifications 184
data transmission settings 38	Services tab 88	storing 185
date, setting 34, 133	settings 10, 41, 59	wrinkled, troubleshooting 161
DC controller errors 131	Update Now 9	environment for printer
declaration of conformity 193	Windows settings 85	specifications 183
default gateway, setting 53	dropouts, troubleshooting 156	troubleshooting 153
default settings, restoring 39	duplexer	environmental stewardship
density	bad connection errors 133	program 189
settings 33	binding options 83	EPS files, troubleshooting 168
troubleshooting 155	jams, clearing 150	error messages
Diagnostics menu 40	models including 4	alphabetical list 133
DIMMs	paper orientation 82	event log 40
accessing 6	paper path test 40	numerical list 126
adding 94	paper sizes supported 82	settings 35, 44
installing 199	part number 173	types of 125
part numbers 173	printing with 90	Windows 166
types available 198	settings 29	error messages, control panel 21
unsupported errors 131	Show Me How menu 24	escape characters 214

224 Index ENWW

Ethernet cards, part numbers 173	Retrieve Job control panel menu	Macintosh software on networks
event log 40	25	11
extended warranty 180	settings 34	memory (DIMMs) 199
	help, Show Me How menu 24	Instant Support Professional
F	HP Customer Care iii	Edition (ISPE) iii
factory defaults, restoring 39	HP Driver Preconfiguration 9	internal clock errors 126
FastRes 4, 32	HP Easy Printer Care software	IP address
FCC regulations 188	13, 103	displaying 34, 41
features 3, 4	HP fraud hotline 109	Macintosh, troubleshooting 167
file directory, printing 26, 97	HP Instant Support Professional	IPX/SPX setting 38, 54
Finnish laser safety statement 195	Edition (ISPE) iii	
firmware upgrade errors 134, 138	HP Jetdirect print server	J
first page	configuring 55	jams
blank 87	errors 132	common causes of 143
jams, troubleshooting 122	installing 211	duplexer, clearing 150
use different paper 87, 89, 92	models including 3	e-mail alerts 98
Flip Pages Up binding option 83	part numbers 173	error messages 127
fonts	removing 212	first sheet, troubleshooting 122
Courier 30	settings 38	frequent 151
EPS files, troubleshooting 168	HP LaserJet Tough paper 79	locations 144
included 4	HP media, ordering 174	output-bin, clearing 148
list, printing 26, 97	HP Printer Utility, Macintosh 11,	print quality after 153
PCL commands 215, 218	105	print-cartridge area, clearing
permanent resources 209	HP SupportPack 180	146
settings 30	HP Web Jetadmin 12, 102	recovery 144
troubleshooting 170	HP-Authorized Dealers iii	recovery setting 36, 46
fraud hotline 109	HP-GL/2 commands 213	Show Me How menu 24
full-bleed images 76	HP-UX software 13	trays, clearing 145
fuser		Japanese VCCI statement 194
errors 130	humidity	Jetadmin, HP Web 12, 102
	specifications 183	Jetdirect print server
install message 134 modes 32	troubleshooting 153	•
		configuring 55 errors 132
warranty 178	I/O buffer overflow errors 129	
G		installing 211
gateway, setting default 53	I/O menu 38	models including 3
General Protection FaultException	Illegal Operation errors 166	part numbers 173
•	image defects, troubleshooting	removing 212
OE 166	153	settings 38
glossary 221	image reptition, troubleshooting	jobs
glossy paper, printing on 79	163	deleting stored 93
gray background, troubleshooting	inflate failure 134	formatted incorrectly 120
157	Information menu 26	not printing, troubleshooting
guides, printer information 2	information pages 96	118
	input trays. See trays	printing stored 93
Н	insert or close tray message 134	Retrieve Job menu 25
heavy paper	installing	stopped, troubleshooting 119
fuser modes 32	CompactFlash cards 204	
printing on 79	EIO cards 211	K
held jobs	Macintosh software for direct	keys, control panel 21
deleting 93	connections 12	Korean EMI statement 194
printing 93		

ENWW Index 225

L	M	PCL commands 216
labels	Macintosh	preprinted 70
fuser modes 32	AppleTalk settings 38	prepunched 70
printing 73	driver settings 89	PS settings 43
specifications 186	drivers supported 8	recycled paper 80
landscape orientation	drivers, troubleshooting 167	rotated, printing on 74
duplexing options 83	HP Printer Utility 105	selecting 60
PCL commands 217	installing printing system for	Show Me How menu 24
setting as default 30	direct connections 12	sizes supported 15
language, control panel 37, 47	installing printing system for	skewed 159
languages, printer	networks 11	specifications 15, 184
settings 35	problems, troubleshooting 167	storing 81
switching, PCL commmands	removing software 12	tray selection 34, 42, 58
218	software 10	tray settings 27
laser safety statements 194, 195	support iv	troubleshooting 141, 153
legal paper, clipped margins 170	USB card, troubleshooting 168	troubleshooting trays 122
letter paper, override A4 settings	maintenance agreements 179	unexpected size or type errors
29	manual feed	130
letterhead	messages 135	usage page 26
fuser modes 32	settings 30, 34, 42	vellum, printing on 78
printing on 70	manuals 2	wrinkled 160
light print	margins	memory
setting toner density 33	custom-sized media 76	adding 94
troubleshooting 155	envelopes 71, 185	autoconfiguration 8
lights, control panel 21	full-bleed images, printing 76	included 3, 10
lighweight paper, printing on 78	legal paper, troubleshooting	installing DIMMs 199
line spacing, setting default 30	170	insufficient 128, 135
lines, troubleshooting 156, 161,	PCL commands 217	part numbers 173
162	settings 31	permanent resources 209
Linux drivers 9, 169	material restrictions 190	RAM disk errors 137
load tray message 135	Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)	RAM disk settings 36, 47
loading	191	sanitizing disk 138
custom-size media 76	media	supply errors 126
	A4 settings 29, 30	unsupported RAMerrors 131
envelopes in tray 1 72 labels 73	•	• •
	F - F	10 0
paper for duplexing 82	curl, troubleshooting 122 curled 160	verifying installation 208
preprinted paper 70 rotated media 74		menu map
	custom-size 29, 76, 86	printing 96
Show Me How menu 24	default size, setting 29	menus, control panel
transparencies 74	document size, selecting 86	access denied 133
tray 1 63	duplexing, sizes supported 82	accessing 21, 23
tray 2 65	first page 87, 89, 92	Configure Device 29
tray 3 67	glossy paper 79	Diagnostics 40
unexpected size or type errors	heavy paper 79	I/O 38
130	HP LaserJet Tough paper 79	Information 26
locked menus 133	HP, ordering 174	Paper Handling 27
loose toner, troubleshooting 158	loading tray 1 63	Print Quality 31
low toner 36, 45	loading tray 2 65	Printing 29
LPT error messages 166	loading tray 3 67	Resets 39
	pages per sheet 87, 90	Retrieve Job 25

226 Index ENWW

Show Me How 24	orientation, page	storing 81
System Setup 34	default, setting 30	tray selection 34, 42, 58
mercury-free product 190	duplexing options 83	tray settings 27
messages	PCL commands 217	troubleshooting 141, 153
alphabetical list 133	rotated media 74	troubleshooting trays 122
event log 40	out of toner 36, 46	unexpected size or type errors
numerical list 126	output bins. See bins	130
settings 35, 44	output quality. See print quality	usage page 26
types of 125	override A4/letter 29	vellum, printing on 78
Windows 166		wrinkled 160
messages, control panel 21	P	Paper Handling menu 27
misformed characters,	packaging printer 179	paper path test 40
troubleshooting 159	page orientation	parallel buffer overflow errors 129
multiple pages per sheet 87, 90	default, setting 30	parallel cable
multipurpose tray. See tray 1	duplexing options 83	length, maximum 50
manaparpood nay. God nay 1	PCL commands 217	part numbers 174
N	rotated media 74	parallel communications, settings
n-up printing 87, 90	page too complex error 129	38
networks	pages per minutet 3	parallel port
configuring 52	pages per sheet 87, 90	connecting 50
default gateway 53	paper	locating 7
disabling protocols 53	A4 settings 29, 30	part numbers
HP Jetdirect print servers,	colored 79	accessories 173
models including 3	curl, troubleshooting 122	cables 173
HP Web Jetadmin 102	curled 160	EIO cards 173
IP address 52	custom-size 29, 76, 86	media, HP 174
Macintosh installation 11	default size, setting 29	memory 173
settings 38	document size, selecting 86	print cartridges 173
software 12	duplexing, sizes supported 82	parts, ordering 172
subnet mask 52	first page 87, 89, 92	pausing a print request 92
troubleshooting printing 165	fuser modes 32	PCL commands
next-day on-site service 179	glossy 79	common 216
No System error 131	heavy 79	
noise specifications 183	HP LaserJet Tough 79	escape sequences 214, 215
non-HP supplies 108, 126, 136	HP, ordering 174	font selection 215, 218
	_	syntax 214
not responding, troubleshooting 124	loading tray 1 63 loading tray 2 65	PCL drivers 8
number of copies, setting default	loading tray 2 63	PCL font list, printing 26
29	<b>G</b> ,	PCL, setting as printer language
29	pages per sheet 87, 90 PCL commands 216	35
0		PDF error pages 30
on-site service agreements 179	preprinted 70	permanent resources 209
on/off switch, locating 6	prepunched 70	permanent storage errors 132
online support iii	PS settings 43	personalities
operating environment	recycled 80	automatic switching 44
specifications 183	rotated, printing on 74	errors 133
operating systems supported 8	selecting 60	settings 35
	Show Me How menu 24	switching, PCL commands 218
ordering	sizes supported 15	physical specifications 182
media, HP 174	skewed 159	PJL (Printer Job Language)
part numbers for 173	specifications 15, 184	commands 213

ENWW Index 227

portrait orientation	warranty 178	settings 30
duplexing options 83	Print Document On 86	troubleshooting 118
PCL commands 217	print jobs	PS font list, printing 26
setting as default 30	formatted incorrectly 120	PS, setting as printer language 35
ports	not printing, troubleshooting	punched paper
included 3	118	fuser modes 32
locating 7	retention 34	printing on 70
LPT error messages 166	stopped, troubleshooting 119	
parallel 50	print quality	Q
supported 4	blurred 163	quality. See print quality
troubleshooting Macintosh 168	dropouts 156	quick copy jobs 34
USB 51	environment 153	quick sets 85
PostScript	gray background 157	
setting as printer language 35	image defects 153	R
troubleshooting 170	jams, after 153	RAM disk
PostScript error pages	light print 155	errors 137
settings 30	lines 156	settings 36, 47
troubleshooting 118	loose toner 158	rear output bin
PostScript Printer Description	media 153	locating 6
(PPD) files	misformed characters 159	printing to 62
included 10	repeating defects 158	recovery, jam 36, 46, 144
troubleshooting 167	repetitive images 163	recycled paper 80
power specifications 182	scattered lines 162	recycling 189
power switch, locating 6	settings 32	reducing documents 86
PPDs	smeared toner 157	registration settings 31
included 10	specks 155	regulatory statements 188
troubleshooting 167	tire tracks 161	removing Macintosh software 12
preconfiguration, driver 9	troubleshooting 153	repacking printer 179
preprinted paper	white lines 161	repeating defects, troubleshooting
fuser modes 32	white spots 162	158, 163
printing on 70	Print Quality menu 31	replacing printing cartridges 110
prepunched paper	printer commands	Resets menu 39
fuser modes 32	escape sequences 214, 215	resizing documents 86
printing on 70	font selection 215, 218	resolution
presets (Macintosh) 89	PCL 216	features 4
print cartridges	syntax 214	settings 32
density settings 33	types of 213	troubleshooting quality 153
EconoMode 33	printer drivers. See drivers	Resolution Enhancement
features 5	printer language	technology (REt) 33
genuine HP 108	settings 35	resource saving 209
jams, clearing 146	switching, PCL commands 218	restoring default settings 39
low 36, 45	Printing menu 29	REt (Resolution Enhancement
non-HP 108	printing stopped 119, 136	technology) 33
out 36, 46	printing system software 8	retention, job
part numbers 173	priority, settings 59	deleting 93
recycling 189	processor speed 4	printing 93
replacement intervals 108	ProRes 4	Retrieve Job menu 25
replacing 110	PS Defer Media setting 43	settings 34
status messages 21	PS Emulation drivers 8	Retrieve Job menu 25
storage 108	PS error pages	RFU load errors 138

228 Index ENWW

right-side panel, locating 6	Web sites 8	ordering 172
rough paper 32	Solaris software 13	recycling 189
<b>3</b>	specifications	replacement intervals 108
S	acoustic 183	replacing print cartridges 110
safety statements 194, 195	electrical 182	status page, printing 26, 96
sanitizing disk 138	envelopes 184	status, viewing with embedded
saving resources, memory 209	features 4	Web server 100
scaling documents 86	labels 186	supplies status
serial buffer overflow errors 129	media 15	control panel messages 21
serial data errors 129	operating environment 183	support
service	paper 184	Linux 169
HP-Authorized Dealers iii	• •	online iii
repacking printer 179	paper types 60	
service agreements 179	physical 182	repacking printer 179
Services tab 88	transparencies 186	SupportPack, HP 180
	specks, troubleshooting 155, 162	symbol sets 31
settings	speed	syntax, PCL commands 214
control panel 20, 41	data transmission settings 38	System Setup menu 34
driver presets (Macintosh) 89	pages per minute 3	_
drivers 10	resolution settings 32	T
priority 59	troubleshooting 116, 119, 123	TCP/IP parameters, manual
quick sets (Windows) 85	Spool32 errors 166	configuration 52
restoring defaults 39	spots, troubleshooting 155, 162	technical support
shipping printer 179	status	Linux 169
Show Me How menu 24	e-mail alerts 98	online iii
SIMMs, incompatibility 198	embedded Web server 100	repacking printer 179
size mismatch errors 138	HP Easy Printer Care software	temperature specifications 183
size, paper specifications 15	104	tests 40
Size/type prompt setting 43	messages, types of 125	text, troubleshooting
skewed pages 159	supplies page, printing 26	blurred 163
Sleep mode	status, supplies	garbled 124
delay, setting 35, 43	control panel messages 21	misformed characters 159
power specifications 182	stopped printing, troubleshooting	three-hole punched paper
turning on or off 39, 44	119, 136	fuser modes 32
slow printing, troubleshooting	stopping a print request 92	printing on 70
119, 123	storage, job	time, setting 34, 133
smeared toner, troubleshooting	deleting 93	timeout settings
157	printing 93	held jobs 34
software	Retrieve Job menu 25	I/O 38
direct connection installation,	settings 34	Sleep mode 35, 43
Macintosh 12	storing	tire tracks, troubleshooting 161
drivers 8	envelopes 185	toner
embedded Web server 13	paper 81	density setting 33
HP Easy Printer Care 13	print cartridges 108	EconoMode 33
HP Web Jetadmin 12	straight-through paper path 62	low 36, 45
Macintosh 10	subnet mask 52	out of 36, 46
network 12	supplies	output quality, troubleshooting
network installation, Macintosh	counterfeit 109	157
11	e-mail alerts 98	top output bin
settings 41, 59	memory errors 126	full message 138
uninstalling Macintosh 12	non-HP 108, 126, 136	locating 6
armotaming Machinestr 12	11011-111 100, 120, 130	looding 0

ENWW Index 229

loading 65 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setti printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 8 rotated media, printing on 74 configuration page printing 117 loading paper 82 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 roubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	
transmission errors 129 double-sided printing 91 duplexing manually 84 Macintosh problet fuser modes 32 duplexing, loading paper 82 media 153 messages, types printing 74 included 3 message 134 paper 141 paper 145 paper 141 paper 145 paper 141 pap	
transparencies fuser modes 32 HP, ordering 176 printing 74 specifications 186 insert or close message 134 custom-size media, printing on 76 duplexing, loading paper 82 duplexing 145 paper 141 custom-size media, printing on 76 custom-size settings 29 duplexing manually 84 paper 63 PS errors 118 repeating defects repetitive images scattered lines 1 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 try 2 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 printing from 34, 42, 58 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 printing from 34, 42, 58 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 printing from 34, 42, 58 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 printing from 34, 42, 58 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 printing from 34, 42, 58 duplexing manually 84 jams clearing 145 printing from 34, 42, 58 duplexing manually 84 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 custom-size media, printing on 74 settings 27 custom-size media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel messages, paper sizes supper sizes suppe	
fuser modes 32 HP, ordering 176 empty 139 messages, types printing 74 specifications 186 included 3 specifications 186 included 3 specifications 186 included 3 specifications 186 insert or close message 134 output quality 15 paper 141 custom-size media, printing on 76 load message 135 custom-size settings 29 duplexing, loading paper 63 loading paper 63 loading paper 63 paper specifications 15 paper path test 40 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 rotated media, printing on 76 duplexing manually 84 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 tray 2 custom-size media, printing on 76 duplexing, loading paper 82 empty 139 messages, types network printing 145 paper 141 paper 145 paper 63 printing 30 repeating defects repeating 46 paper specifications 15 paper specifications 15 selecting 34, 42, 58 settings 27 stettings 27 stoubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tray selection 12 tray 2 use message 140 use message 140 use message 140 use message 133 rotated media, printing on 76 duplexing, loading paper 82 network printing 18, 118 paper 17 paper 141 paper 1	
HP, ordering 176 printing 74 specifications 186 insert or close message 134 paper 141 custom-size media, printing on 76 custom-size settings 29 duplexing manually 84 loading 63 locating 6 manual feed settings 30 locating 6 message 135 paper path test 40 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 145 printing 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 145 printing 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 tray 3 loading 65 printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 145 printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 tray 3 loading 65 printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 settings 27 control panel messages, types network printing output quality 159 paper 141	of 105
HP, ordering 176 empty 139 messages, types printing 74 included 3 message 134 output quality 159 paper 141	of 40E
printing 74 specifications 186 included 3 network printing specifications 186 insert or close message 134 output quality 18 jams, clearing 145 paper 141 custom-size media, printing on 76 load message 135 postScript problem 18, 111 custom-size settings 29 locating 6 printing 118, 111 custom-size settings 29 locating 6 printing 118, 111 paper 141	UI 1 <b>2</b> 5
specifications 186 insert or close message 134 output quality 15 jams, clearing 145 paper 141 paper 141 custom-size media, printing on 76 load message 135 printing 118, 118 paper 141 pap	
tray 1 custom-size media, printing on 76 custom-size settings 29 duplexing manually 84 locating 6 manual feed settings 30 locating 6 moral feed settings 30 locating 6 locating 6 poper 139 poper specifications 15 show Me How me loading 31 slow printing 119 smanual feed settings 31 slow printing 119 smeared toner 11 specks 155 settings 27 specks 155 spe	
custom-size media, printing on 76 load message 135 PostScript problem 76 loading paper 63 printing 118, 118 custom-size settings 29 locating 6 PS errors 118 duplexing manually 84 manual feed settings 30 repeating defects duplexing, loading paper 82 open 139 repeating defects paper specifications 71 paper path test 40 scattered lines 1 paper specifications 15 Show Me How me 10ading 63 PCL commands 216 skewed pages 1 locating 6 registration settings 31 slow printing 119 manual feed settings 30, 42 paper specifications 15 settings 27 specks 155 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 Show Me How menu 24 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 custom-size media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 type mismatch message 139 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size or type errors 130 unexpected size or type errors 130 unexpected size or type errors 140 white spots 162 white spots 162 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 troubleshooting 150 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 8 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	
custom-size settings 29 locating 6 PS errors 118 duplexing manually 84 manual feed settings 30 repeating defects envelopes, printing 71 paper path test 40 scattered lines 1 jams, clearing 145 paper specifications 15 Show Me How me loading 63 PCL commands 216 skewed pages 1 locating 6 settings 30, 42 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 139 tray selection 12 custom-size media, printing on 76 loading 65 blank pages 123 two-sided printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 roubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	ms 170
custom-size settings 29 locating 6 PS errors 118 duplexing manually 84 manual feed settings 30 repeating defects open 139 repetitive images envelopes, printing 71 paper specifications 15 Show Me How me loading 63 PCL commands 216 skewed pages 1 locating 6 registration settings 31 slow printing 119 paper specifications 15 settings 27 specks 155 rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 139 tray selection 12 tray 2 custom-size media, printing on 74 troubleshooting 145 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 paper specifications 15 checklist 116 loading 65 paper specifications 15 checklist 116 control panel display 117 manual 84 roubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	
duplexing manually 84 manual feed settings 30 repeating defects duplexing, loading paper 82 open 139 repetitive images envelopes, printing 71 paper path test 40 scattered lines 1 jams, clearing 145 paper specifications 15 Show Me How me loading 63 PCL commands 216 skewed pages 1 locating 6 registration settings 31 slow printing 119 selecting 34, 42, 58 smeared toner 1 specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 Show Me How menu 24 settings 27 specifications 15 rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 139 tray selection 12 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 custom-size media, printing on 76 unexpected size or type errors 130 windows error metropisms, clearing 145 troubleshooting 120 use message 140 windows error metropisms, clearing 145 blurred print 163 binding edge setting paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How means 20 paper size support sizes support alphabetical 133 Show Me How means 20 paper sizes support alphabetical 133 Show Me How means 216 paper sizes size or specifications 15 paper sizes support settings 27 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How means 20 paper sizes support si	J, 124
duplexing, loading paper 82 open 139 repetitive images envelopes, printing 71 paper path test 40 scattered lines 1 jams, clearing 145 paper specifications 15 Show Me How me loading 63 PCL commands 216 skewed pages 1 locating 6 registration settings 31 slow printing 119 manual feed settings 30, 42 selecting 34, 42, 58 smeared toner 1 specifications 15 settings 27 specks 155 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 Show Me How menu 24 speed 116 rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error message 139 loading 65 blank pages 123 white spots 162 white spots 162 paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How menual scattered lines 15 scattered lines 15 show Me How menual scattered lines 15 scattered lines 15 scattered lines 15 show Me How menual 24 settings 115 show Me How menual 24 specks 155	158
envelopes, printing 71  jams, clearing 145  loading 63  locating 6  manual feed settings 30, 42  paper specifications 15  printing from 34, 42, 58, 65  printings 27  troubleshooting 120, 122  custom-size media, printing on 76  duplexing manually 84  jams, clearing 145  paper specifications 15  paper specifications 15  printing from 34, 42, 58  settings 27  troubleshooting 120, 122  custom-size media, printing on 76  duplexing manually 84  jams, clearing 145  paper specifications 15  paper specifications 15  settings 27  troubleshooting 120, 122  type and size message 138  tire tracks 161  tray 2  custom-size media, printing on 76  duplexing manually 84  jams, clearing 145  troubleshooting 120  blank pages 123  two-sided printing pinding edge setting paper specifications 15  printing from 34, 42, 58  rotated media, printing on 74  settings 27  control panel display 117  manual 84  paper specifications 15  paper specifications 15  paper specifications 15  paper specifications 15  Show Me How me 12  skewed pages 11  slow printing 112  specks 155  specks 156  speck 116  text 124  settings 27  troubleshooting 120, 122  text quality 159,  tray selection 12  tray sel	
jams, clearing 145 paper specifications 15 Show Me How me loading 63 PCL commands 216 skewed pages 1 locating 6 registration settings 31 slow printing 119 manual feed settings 30, 42 selecting 34, 42, 58 smeared toner 1 specifications 15 settings 27 specks 155 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 Show Me How menu 24 speed 116 rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 custom-size media, printing on 76 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error medians, clearing 145 troubleshooting blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setting 120, 122 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How means 15 paper sizes support 130 skewed pages 140 skewed pages 140 skewed pages 140 settings 155 paper specifications 15 paper specifications 15 plurred print 163 pinding edge setting 145 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How means 150 paper sizes support 150 pape	
loading 63 PCL commands 216 skewed pages 1 locating 6 registration settings 31 slow printing 119 manual feed settings 30, 42 selecting 34, 42, 58 smeared toner 1 speed specifications 15 settings 27 specks 155 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 Show Me How menu 24 speed 116 rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 tray 2 custom-size media, printing on 76 130 white spots 162 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error mediang, printing 145 troubleshooting 120 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setting 145 configuration page printing 117 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How means 126 speed 116 slow printing 118 slow printing 119 slow printing 1	-
locating 6 registration settings 31 slow printing 119 manual feed settings 30, 42 selecting 34, 42, 58 smeared toner 11 spaper specifications 15 settings 27 specks 155 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 Show Me How menu 24 speed 116 rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 text quality 159, troubleshooting 120, 122 tray selection 12 tray 2 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 tray selection 12 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error mediang, printing 145 troubleshooting 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setting 145 printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 8 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How means 24 speed 116 spaper specks 155	
manual feed settings 30, 42 selecting 34, 42, 58 smeared toner 1 spaper specifications 15 settings 27 specks 155 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 custom-size media, printing on 76 130 white spots 162 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error mediang from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 8 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 roubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How mediang 130 specks 155 speck 162 specks 155 specks 1	
paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 custom-size media, printing on 76 130 white spots 162 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error median, printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 specks 155 specks 162 text quality 159, tray selection 12 trays 122 white spots 162 Windows error median paper 31 two-sided printing binding edge setting binding edge setting layout options 81 specks 155 specks 155 specks 161 text 124 text quality 159, troubleshooting 120, 122 custom-size median, printing on 120, 122 specifications 15 specks 15 specks 155 specks 162 text quality 159, text q	
printing from 34, 42, 58, 65 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 tray 2 custom-size media, printing on 76 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 loading 65 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 white spots 162 Windows error me wrinkled paper 19 blank pages 123 blurred print 163 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel display 117 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How menu 24 speed 116 text 124 text quality 159, troubleshooting 120, 122 text quality 159, text q	157
rotated media, printing on 74 size mismatch errors 138 text 124 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 troubleshooting 120, 122 text quality 159, troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 custom-size media, printing on 76 unexpected size or type errors 130 white spots 162 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error metal plants, clearing 145 troubleshooting wrinkled paper 10 loading 65 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 80 rotated media, printing on 74 configuration page printing 117 loading paper 82 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	
settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 text quality 159, troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 custom-size media, printing on 76 130 white spots 162 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error metagorial paper specifications 15 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 8 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 roubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How metagorial page rotated media page supports alphabetical 133 Show Me How metagorial page rotated media page rotat	
troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 type mismatch message 139 tray selection 12 custom-size media, printing on 76 toubleshooting 145 troubleshooting 15 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 type and size message 138 tire tracks 161 tray 2 tray selection 12 tray selection 12 tray selection 12 white spots 162 white spots 162 white spots 162 white spots 162 troubleshooting wrinkled paper 19 two-sided printing blurred print 163 binding edge settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 roubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How metals 133 show Me How metals 133 show Me How metals 134 tray selection 12	
tray 2 custom-size media, printing on 76 130 duplexing manually 84 jams, clearing 145 loading 65 paper specifications 15 printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 troubleshooting 139 tray selection 12 trays 122 white spots 162 Windows error media, wrinkled paper 13 two-sided printing 133 blurred print 163 checklist 116 configuration page printing 117 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel display 117 manual 84 tray selection 12 trays 122 white spots 162 two-sided paper 12 too-sided printing blurred print 163 configuration page printing 117 loading paper 82 tray 3 Show Me How media, Show Me How media, Paper sizes supposed to the paper 14 troubleshooting 120, 122 tray 3	163
custom-size media, printing on 76 130 unexpected size or type errors 76 130 white spots 162 white spots 162 duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error median paper specifications 15 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setting printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 85 rotated media, printing on 74 configuration page printing 117 loading paper 82 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 roubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How metals 133 show Me How metals 134 printing on 74 settings 27 alphabetical 133 show Me How metals 150 pages 120, 122 show metals 150 pages 120 pages 123 page	
duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error medianally 84 use message 140 Windows error medianally 84 use message 140 Windows error medianal 84 use message 123 two-sided printing 140 binding edge settianal 84 use message 140 Windows error medianal 84 use message 123 use message 124 use message 125 use	20
duplexing manually 84 use message 140 Windows error metalograms, clearing 145 troubleshooting wrinkled paper 19 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setting printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 80 configuration page printing 117 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How metalograms.	
jams, clearing 145 troubleshooting wrinkled paper 19 loading 65 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setting printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 85 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	
loading 65 blank pages 123 two-sided printing paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setti printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 8 rotated media, printing on 74 configuration page printing 117 loading paper 82 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 roubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	essages 166
paper specifications 15 blurred print 163 binding edge setti printing from 34, 42, 58 checklist 116 layout options 8 rotated media, printing on 74 configuration page printing 117 loading paper 82 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, paper sizes support alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	160
printing from 34, 42, 58 rotated media, printing on 74 settings 27 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, tray 3 checklist 116 layout options 88 configuration page printing 117 control panel display 117 manual 84 control panel messages, paper sizes support alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	
rotated media, printing on 74 configuration page printing 117 loading paper 82 settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, paper sizes support alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	ings 29
settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, paper sizes support alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	3
settings 27 control panel display 117 manual 84 troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, paper sizes support alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	2, 90
troubleshooting 120, 122 control panel messages, paper sizes supporting 3 alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	
tray 3 alphabetical 133 Show Me How me	orted 82
·	
custom-sized media, printing on control panel messages, troubleshooting	
76 numerical 126 usage page 26	
duplexing manually 84 curled paper 122, 160 using duplexer 8	33
jams, clearing 145 dropouts 156 type mismatch messi	
loading 67 duplexing 123	GUE 103
models including 3 environment 153	age 100
paper specifications 15 EPS files 168 unexpected size or ty	age 109
part number 173 event log 40 uninstalling Macintos	
physical specifications 182 fonts 170 UNIX	pe errors 130
printing from 34, 42, 58 gray background 157 carriage return se	pe errors 130
Difficulty from the Section of the Contract of	/pe errors 130 sh software 12
	/pe errors 130 sh software 12
rotated media, printing on 74 image defects 153 model scripts 9	pe errors 130 h software 12
	vpe errors 130 sh software 12 ettings 31 drivers 9

230 Index ENWW

```
usage page 26
                                      error messages,
usage page, printing 96
                                       troubleshooting 166
USB buffer overflow errors 129
                                   wrinkled paper, troubleshooting
USB cable, part number 174
                                     160
USB port
  connecting 51
  locating 7
  Macintosh installation 12
  supported 4
  troubleshooting Macintosh 168
USB storage device errors 139
Use Different Paper/Covers 87
vellum, printing on 78
vertical spacing, setting default 30
voltage specifications 182
W
warnings setting 35
warranty
  extended 180
  print cartridge 178
  product 177
  transfer unit and fuser 178
watermarks 86
wave, troubleshooting 122
wavy paper, troubleshooting 160
Web sites
  customer support iii
  documentation 2
  fraud reports 109
  HP Web Jetadmin, downloading
      102
  Linux support 169
  Macintosh customer support iv
  Material Safety Data Sheet
    (MSDS) 191
  ordering supplies 172
  paper specifications 184
  software, downloading 8
weekly on-site service 179
weight, paper specifications 15
white lines or spots.
 troubleshooting 161
Wide A4 settings 30
Windows
  driver settings 10, 85
  drivers supported 8
```

ENWW Index 231

232 Index ENWW

© 2005 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

